

Table of Contents

2000 Supervisory Policy and Issues

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2000.0		Introduction to Topics for Supervisory Review
2010.0		Supervision of Subsidiaries
	2010.0.1	Policy Statement on the Responsibility of Bank Holding Companies to Act as Sources of Strength to Their Subsidiary Banks
	2010.0.2	Board Order Requesting a Waiver from the Board's Source of Strength Policy
	2010.0.3	Inspection Objectives
	2010.0.4	Inspection Procedures
2010.1		Funding Policies
	2010.1.1	Inspection Objectives
	2010.1.2	Inspection Procedures
2010.2		Loan Administration
	2010.2.1	Uniform Real Estate Lending Standards
	2010.2.2	Lending Standards for Commercial Loans
	2010.2.2.1	Sound Practices in Loan Standards and Approval
	2010.2.2.1.1	Formal Credit Policies
	2010.2.2.1.2	Formal Credit-Staff Approval of Transactions
	2010.2.2.1.3	Loan-Approval Documents
	2010.2.2.1.4	Use of Forward-Looking Tools in the Approval Process
	2010.2.2.1.5	Stress Testing of the Borrower's Financial Capacity
	2010.2.2.1.6	Management and Lender Information
	2010.2.3	Leveraged Lending
	2010.2.3.1	Interagency Guidance on Leveraged Lending
	2010.2.3.1.1	Risk-Management Framework
	2010.2.3.1.2	Leveraged Lending Definition
	2010.2.3.1.3	General Policy Expectations
	2010.2.3.1.4	Participations Purchased
	2010.2.3.1.5	Underwriting Standards
	2010.2.3.1.6	Valuation Standards
	2010.2.3.1.7	Pipeline Management
	2010.2.3.1.8	Reporting and Analytics
	2010.2.3.1.9	Risk Rating Leveraged Loans
	2010.2.3.1.10	Credit Analysis
	2010.2.3.1.11	Problem-Credit Management
	2010.2.3.1.12	Deal Sponsors
	2010.2.3.1.13	Credit Review
	2010.2.3.1.14	Stress Testing
	2010.2.3.1.15	Conflicts of Interest
	2010.2.3.1.16	Reputational Risk
	2010.2.3.1.17	Compliance
	2010.2.4	Credit-Risk Management Guidance for Home Equity Lending
	2010.2.4.1	Credit-Risk Management Systems

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2010.2.4.1.1	Product Development and Marketing
	2010.2.4.1.2	Origination and Underwriting
	2010.2.4.1.3	Third-Party Originations
	2010.2.4.1.4	Collateral-Valuation Management
	2010.2.4.1.5	AVMs
	2010.2.4.1.6	Account Management
	2010.2.4.1.7	Portfolio Management
	2010.2.4.1.8	Operations, Servicing, and Collections
	2010.2.4.1.9	Secondary-Market Activities
	2010.2.4.1.10	Portfolio Classifications, Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses, and Capital
	2010.2.5	Oversight of Concentrations in Commercial Real Estate Lending and Sound Risk-Management Lending
	2010.2.5.1	Scope of the CRE Concentration Guidance
	2010.2.5.2	CRE Concentration Assessments
	2010.2.5.3	CRE Risk Management
	2010.2.5.3.1	Board and Management Oversight of CRE Concentration Risk
	2010.2.5.3.2	CRE Portfolio Management
	2010.2.5.3.3	CRE Management Information Systems
	2010.2.5.3.4	Market Analysis
	2010.2.5.3.5	Credit Underwriting Standards
	2010.2.5.3.6	CRE Portfolio Stress Testing and Sensitivity Analysis
	2010.2.5.3.7	Credit-Risk Review Function
	2010.2.5.4	Supervisory Oversight of CRE Concentration Risk
	2010.2.5.4.1	Evaluation of CRE Concentrations
	2010.2.5.4.2	Assessment of Capital Adequacy for CRE Concentration Risk
	2010.2.6	Guidance on Private Student Loans with Graduated Repayment Terms at Origination
	2010.2.6.1	Principles for Private Student Loans with Graduated Repayment Terms at Origination
	2010.2.7	Loan Participations, the Agreements and Participants
	2010.2.7.1	Board Policies on Loan Participations
	2010.2.7.2	Loan Participation Agreement
	2010.2.7.3	Accounting for Loan Participations
	2010.2.7.4	Structuring the Loan Participation Agreement
	2010.2.7.5	Independent Credit Analysis
	2010.2.7.6	Sales of Loan Participations in the Secondary Market
	2010.2.7.7	Sale of Loan Participations With or Without the Right of Recourse
	2010.2.7.8	Sales of 100 Percent Participations
	2010.2.7.9	Participation Transactions Between Affiliates
	2010.2.7.9.1	Transfer of Low-Quality Assets
	2010.2.7.10	Concentrations of Credit Involving Loan Participations
	2010.2.7.11	Loan Participations and Environmental Liability
	2010.2.7.12	Red Flag Warning Signals
	2010.2.8	Inspection Objectives
	2010.2.9	Inspection Procedures
	2010.2.10	Internal Control Questionnaire
	2010.2.11	Appendix I – Examiner Loan-Sampling Requirements for Credit-Extending Nonbank Subsidiaries of BHCs with \$10-50 Billion in Total Consolidated Assets

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2010.3	2010.2.11.1	Loan Sampling Methodology
	2010.2.11.2	Documentation of Loan Sampling Analysis and Methodology
	2010.2.11.3	Follow-Up Expectations for Inspections with Adverse Findings
		Investments
	2010.3.1	Inspection Objectives
	2010.3.2	Inspection Procedures

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2010.4		Consolidated Planning Process
	2010.4.1	Inspection Objectives
	2010.4.2	Inspection Procedures
2010.5		Environmental Liability
	2010.5.1	Background Information on Environmental Liability
	2010.5.2	Overview of Environmental Hazards
	2010.5.3	Impact on Banking Organizations
	2010.5.4	Protection against Environmental Liability
	2010.5.5	Conclusion
	2010.5.6	Inspection Objectives
	2010.5.7	Inspection Procedures
2010.6		Financial Institution Subsidiary Retail Sales of Nondeposit Investment Products
	2010.6.1	Interagency Statement on Retail Sales of Nondeposit Investment Products
	2010.6.1.1	Scope
	2010.6.1.2	Adoption of Policies and Procedures
	2010.6.1.2.1	Program Management
	2010.6.1.2.2	Arrangements with Third Parties
	2010.6.1.3	General Guidelines
	2010.6.1.3.1	Disclosures and Advertising
	2010.6.1.3.2	Setting and Circumstances
	2010.6.1.3.3	Qualifications and Training
	2010.6.1.3.4	Suitability and Sales Practices
	2010.6.1.3.5	Compensation
	2010.6.1.3.6	Compliance
	2010.6.1.4	Supervision by Banking Agencies
	2010.6.2	Supplementary Federal Reserve Supervisory and Examination Guidance Pertaining to the Sale of Uninsured Nondeposit Investment Products
	2010.6.2.1	Program Management
	2010.6.2.1.1	Types of Products Sold
	2010.6.2.1.2	Use of Identical or Similar Names
	2010.6.2.1.3	Permissible Use of Customer Information
	2010.6.2.1.4	Arrangements with Third Parties
	2010.6.2.1.5	Contingency Planning
	2010.6.2.2	Disclosures and Advertising
	2010.6.2.2.1	Content, Form, and Timing of Disclosure
	2010.6.2.2.2	Advertising
	2010.6.2.2.3	Additional Disclosures
	2010.6.2.3	Setting and Circumstances
	2010.6.2.3.1	Physical Separation from Deposit Activities
	2010.6.2.4	Designation, Training, and Supervision of Sales Personnel and Personnel Making Referrals
	2010.6.2.4.1	Hiring and Training of Sales Personnel
	2010.6.2.4.2	Training of Bank Personnel Who Make Referrals
	2010.6.2.4.3	Supervision of Personnel

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2010.6.2.5	Suitability and Sales Practices
	2010.6.2.5.1	Suitability of Recommendations
	2010.6.2.5.2	Sales Practices
	2010.6.2.5.3	Customer Complaints
	2010.6.2.6	Compensation
	2010.6.2.7	Compliance
	2010.6.2.8	Audit
	2010.6.2.9	Joint Interpretations of the Interagency Statement
	2010.6.2.9.1	Disclosure Matters
	2010.6.2.9.2	Joint Interpretations on Retail Sales of Nondeposit Investment Products
	2010.6.3	Inspection/Examination Objectives
	2010.6.4	Inspection/Examination Procedures
	2010.6.4.1	Scope of the Procedures
2010.7		<i>Reserved</i>
2010.8		Sharing of Facilities and Staff by Banking Organizations
	2010.8.1	Identification of Facilities and Staff
	2010.8.2	Examiner Guidance on Sharing Facilities and Staff
2010.9		Supervision of Subsidiaries—Required Absences from Sensitive Positions
	2010.9.1	Statement on Required Absences from Sensitive Positions
	2010.9.2	Inspection Objectives
	2010.9.3	Inspection Procedures
2010.10		Internal Loan Review
	2010.10.1	Inspection Objectives
	2010.10.2	Inspection Procedures
2010.11		Private-Banking Functions and Activities
	2010.11.1	Overview of Private Banking and Its Associated Activities
	2010.11.1.1	Products and Services
	2010.11.1.1.1	Personal Investment Companies, Offshore Trusts, and Token-Name Accounts
	2010.11.1.1.2	Deposit-Taking Activities of Subsidiary Institutions
	2010.11.1.1.3	Investment Management
	2010.11.1.1.4	Credit
	2010.11.1.1.5	Payable-Through Accounts
	2010.11.1.1.6	Personal Trust and Estates
	2010.11.1.1.7	Custody Services
	2010.11.1.1.8	Funds Transfer
	2010.11.1.1.9	Hold Mail, No-Mail, and Electronic-Mail Only
	2010.11.1.1.10	Bill-Paying Services
	2010.11.2	Functional Review
	2010.11.2.1	Supervision and Organization
	2010.11.2.2	Risk Management

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2010.11.2.2.1	Customer-Due Diligence Policy and Procedures
	2010.11.2.2.1.1	Suspicious Activity Reports
	2010.11.2.2.2	Credit-Underwriting Standards
	2010.11.2.3	Fiduciary Standards
	2010.11.2.4	Operational Controls
	2010.11.2.4.1	Segregation of Duties
	2010.11.2.4.2	Inactive and Dormant Accounts
	2010.11.2.4.3	Pass-Through Accounts and Omnibus Accounts
	2010.11.2.4.4	Hold-Mail, No-Mail, and E-mail-Only Controls
	2010.11.2.4.5	Funds Transfer—Tracking Transaction Flows
	2010.11.2.4.6	Custody—Detection of “Free-Riding”
	2010.11.2.5	Management Information Systems
	2010.11.2.6	Audit
	2010.11.2.7	Compliance
	2010.11.2.7.1	Office of Foreign Assets Control
	2010.11.2.7.2	Bank Secrecy Act
	2010.11.3	Preparation for Inspection
	2010.11.3.1	Pre-Inspection Review
	2010.11.3.2	Inspection Staffing and Scope
	2010.11.3.3	Reflection of Organizational Structure
	2010.11.3.4	Risk-Focused Approach
	2010.11.3.5	First-Day Letter
	2010.11.4	Inspection Objectives
	2010.11.5	Inspection Procedures
	2010.11.5.1	Private-Banking Pre-Inspection Procedures
	2010.11.5.2	Full-Inspection Phase
2010.12		Fees Involving Investments of Fiduciary Assets in Mutual Funds and Potential Conflicts of Interest
	2010.12.1	Due-Diligence Review Needed before Entering into Fee Arrangements
	2010.12.2	Inspection Objectives
	2010.12.3	Inspection Procedures
2010.13		Establishing Accounts for Foreign Governments, Embassies, and Political Figures
	2010.13.1	Interagency Advisory on Accepting Accounts for Foreign Governments, Embassies, and Political Figures
2020.0		Intercompany Transactions—Introduction
	2020.0.1	Analysis of Intercompany Transactions
	2020.0.2	Role of the Examiner
2020.1		Intercompany Transactions Between Affiliates— Sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act
	2020.1.01	What’s New in this Revised Section
	2020.1.05	Sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act, and Regulation W
	2020.1.1	Section 23A of the Federal Reserve Act

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2020.1.1.1	Definition of an Affiliate
	2020.1.1.2	Definition of Affiliates by Type of Entity
	2020.1.1.2.1	Investment Funds Advised by the Member Bank or an Affiliate of the Member Bank
	2020.1.1.2.2	Financial Subsidiaries
	2020.1.1.2.3	Partnerships
	2020.1.1.2.4	Subsidiaries of Affiliates
	2020.1.1.2.5	Companies Designated by the Appropriate Federal Banking Agency
	2020.1.1.2.6	Merchant Banking
	2020.1.1.2.7	Companies that are not Affiliates
	2020.1.1.2.8	Employee Benefit Plans
	2020.1.2	Quantitative Limits
	2020.1.3	Capital Stock and Surplus
	2020.1.3.1	Determination of Control
	2020.1.4	Covered Transactions
	2020.1.4.1	Attribution Rule
	2020.1.4.2	Credit Transactions with an Affiliate
	2020.1.4.2.1	Extension of Credit to an Affiliate or Other Credit Transaction with an Affiliate
	2020.1.4.2.2	Valuation of Credit Transactions with an Affiliate
	2020.1.4.2.3	Timing of a Credit Transaction with an Affiliate
	2020.1.4.2.4	Leases
	2020.1.4.2.5	Extensions of Credit Secured by Affiliate Securities—General Valuation Rule (Section 223.24(a) and (b))
	2020.1.4.2.6	Extensions of Credit Secured by Affiliate Securities—Mutual Fund Shares
	2020.1.4.3	Asset Purchases
	2020.1.4.3.1	Purchase of Assets under Regulation W
	2020.1.4.4	IDIs Purchase of Securities Issued by an Affiliate
	2020.1.4.5	Issuance of a Letter of Credit or Guarantee
	2020.1.4.5.1	Confirmation of a Letter of Credit Issued by an Affiliate
	2020.1.4.5.2	Credit Enhancements Supporting a Securities Underwriting
	2020.1.4.5.3	Cross-Guarantee Agreements and Cross-Affiliate Netting Arrangements
	2020.1.4.5.4	Keepwell Agreements
	2020.1.4.5.5	Prohibition on the Purchase of Low-Quality Assets
	2020.1.5	Collateral for Certain Transactions with Affiliates
	2020.1.5.1	Collateral Requirements in Regulation W
	2020.1.5.1.1	Deposit Account Collateral
	2020.1.5.1.2	Ineligible Collateral
	2020.1.5.1.3	Perfection and Priority
	2020.1.5.1.4	Unused Portion of an Extension of Credit
	2020.1.5.1.5	Purchasing Affiliate Debt Securities in the Secondary Market
	2020.1.5.1.6	Credit Transactions with Nonaffiliates that Become Affiliates
	2020.1.6	Limitations on Collateral
	2020.1.7	Derivative Transactions with Affiliates
	2020.1.7.1	Derivative Transactions between Insured Depository Institutions and Their Affiliates

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2020.1.7.1.1	Section 23A on Derivatives Transactions
	2020.1.7.1.2	Section 23B and Regulation W Regarding Derivative Transactions
	2020.1.7.1.3	Covering Derivatives that are the Functional Equivalent of a Guarantee
	2020.1.8	Intraday Extensions of Credit
	2020.1.8.1	Standard under Which the Agencies May Grant Additional Exemptions
	2020.1.9	Exemptions from Section 23A
	2020.1.9.1	Covered Transactions Exempt from the Quantitative Limits and Collateral Requirements
	2020.1.9.1.1	Parent Institution/Subsidiary Institution Transactions
	2020.1.9.1.2	Sister-Bank Exemption (Section 223.41(b)).
	2020.1.9.1.3	Purchase of Loans on a Non-Recourse Basis from an Affiliate IDI
	2020.1.9.1.4	Internal Corporate Reorganizations
	2020.1.9.2	Other Covered Transactions Exempt from the Quantitative Limits, Collateral Requirements, and Low-Quality-Asset Prohibition
	2020.1.9.2.1	Correspondent Banking
	2020.1.9.2.2	Secured Credit Transactions
	2020.1.10	Asset Purchases from an Affiliate—Exemptions
	2020.1.10.1	Purchase of a Security by an Insured Depository Institution from an Affiliate
	2020.1.10.2	Purchases of Assets with Readily Identifiable Market Quotes
	2020.1.10.3	Purchasing Certain Marketable Securities
	2020.1.10.3.1	Broker-dealer Requirement and Securities Purchases from Foreign Broker-Dealers
	2020.1.10.3.2	Securities Eligible for Purchase by a State Member Bank
	2020.1.10.3.3	No Purchases Within 30 Days of an Underwriting
	2020.1.10.3.4	No Securities Issued by an Affiliate
	2020.1.10.3.5	Price-Verification Methods
	2020.1.10.3.6	Record Retention
	2020.1.10.4	Purchasing Municipal Securities
	2020.1.10.5	Purchase of Loans on a Non-Recourse Basis
	2020.1.10.6	Purchases of Assets by Newly Formed Institutions
	2020.1.10.7	Transactions Approved under the Bank Merger Act
	2020.1.11	Purchases of Extensions of Credit—the Purchase Exemption
	2020.1.12	Other Board-Approved Exemptions from Section 23A
	2020.1.12.1	Exemptions and Interpretations from the Attribution Rule of Section 23A
	2020.1.12.2	Interpretation—Loans to a Nonaffiliate that Purchases Securities or Other Assets Through a Depository Institution Affiliate Agent or Broker
	2020.1.12.3	Exemption—Loans to a Nonaffiliate that Purchases Securities from a Depository Institution Securities Affiliate That Acts as a Riskless Principal
	2020.1.12.4	Exemption—Depository Institution Loan to a Nonaffiliate Pursuant to a Preexisting Line of Credit and the Proceeds Are Used to Purchase Securities from the Institution’s Broker-Dealer Affiliate

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2020.1.12.5	Exemption—Credit Card Transactions
	2020.1.13	An IDI’s Acquisition of an Affiliate that Becomes an Operating Subsidiary
	2020.1.14	Step-Transaction Exemption (Section 223.31(d) and (e))
	2020.1.14.1	Application of Sections 23A and 23B of Subpart G to U.S. Branches and Agencies of Foreign Banks
	2020.1.14.1.1	Applicability of Sections 23A and 23B to Foreign Banks Engaged in Underwriting Insurance, Underwriting or Dealing in Securities, Merchant Banking, or Insurance Company Investment in the United States
	2020.1.15	Section 23B of the Federal Reserve Act
	2020.1.15.1	Transactions Exempt from Section 23B of the FRA
	2020.1.15.2	Purchases of Securities for Which an Affiliate Is the Principal Underwriter
	2020.1.15.3	Definition of Affiliate under Section 23B
	2020.1.15.4	Advertising and Guarantee Restriction
	2020.1.16	Inspection Objectives
	2020.1.17	Inspection Procedures
	2020.1.18	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2020.2		Loan Participations—Intercompany Transactions
	2020.2.1	Inspection Objectives

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2020.2.2	Inspection Procedures
	2020.2.3	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2020.3		Sale and Transfer of Assets
	2020.3.1	Inspection Objectives
	2020.3.2	Inspection Procedures
2020.4		Compensating Balances
	2020.4.1	Inspection Objectives
	2020.4.2	Inspection Procedures
2020.5		Dividends
	2020.5.1	Policy Statement on Cash Dividend Payments
	2020.5.1.1	Policy Statement on the Payment of Cash Dividends by State Member Banks and Bank Holding Companies
	2020.5.2	Inspection Objectives
	2020.5.3	Inspection Procedures
	2020.5.4	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2020.6		Management and Service Fees
	2020.6.1	Transactions Subject to Federal Reserve Act Section 23B
	2020.6.2	Inspection Objectives
	2020.6.3	Inspection Procedures
	2020.6.4	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2020.7		Transfer of Low-Quality Loans or Other Assets
	2020.7.1	Inspection Objectives
	2020.7.2	Inspection Procedures
2020.8		(Reserved for Future Use)
2020.9		Split-Dollar Life Insurance
	2020.9.1	Split-Dollar Life Insurance Arrangements
	2020.9.1.1	Split-Dollar Life Insurance Endorsement Plan
	2020.9.1.2	Split-Dollar Life Insurance Collateral Assignment
	2020.9.2	Compliance with Applicable Laws
	2020.9.2.1	Compliance with Sections 23A and 23B of the FRA
	2020.9.2.2	Investment Authority under the National Banking Act
	2020.9.3	Safety-and-Soundness Concerns
	2020.9.4	Examiner Review of Split-Dollar Life Insurance
	2020.9.5	Inspection Objectives
	2020.9.6	Inspection Procedures
	2020.9.7	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2030.0		Grandfather Rights—Retention and Expansion of Activities
	2030.0.1	Indefinite Grandfather Privileges
	2030.0.2	Activities and Securities of New Bank Holding Companies
	2030.0.3	Limitations on Expansion of Grandfather Rights for Insurance Agency Nonbanking Activities of Bank Holding Companies
	2030.0.4	Successor Rights
	2030.0.5	Expansion of Grandfather Activities
	2030.0.6	Divestitures
	2030.0.7	Inspection Objectives
	2030.0.8	Inspection Procedures
	2030.0.9	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
	2030.0.10	Appendix 1—Expansion of Grandfathered Activities
2040.0		Commitments to the Federal Reserve
	2040.0.1	Inspection Objectives
	2040.0.2	Inspection Procedures
2050.0		Extensions of Credit to BHC Officials
	2050.0.1	BHC Official and Related Interest Transactions between the Parent Company or Its Nonbank Subsidiaries
	2050.0.2	Transactions Involving Other Property or Services
	2050.0.3	Regulation O
	2050.0.3.1	FDICIA and BHC Inspection Guidance for Regulation O
	2050.0.3.2	Definitions in Regulation O (abbreviated listing)
	2050.0.3.2.1	Extension of Credit
	2050.0.3.2.2	Insiders Use of a Bank-Owned Credit Card
	2050.0.3.3	General Prohibitions and Limitations of Regulation O
	2050.0.3.4	Additional Restrictions on Loans to Executive Officers of Member Banks
	2050.0.3.5	Grandfathering Provisions
	2050.0.3.6	Reports by Executive Officers
	2050.0.3.7	Report on Credit to Executive Officers
	2050.0.3.8	Disclosure of Credit from Member Banks to Executive Officers and Principal Shareholders
	2050.0.3.9	Civil Penalties of Regulation O
	2050.0.3.10	Records of Member Banks (and BHCs)
	2050.0.3.10.1	Recordkeeping for Insiders of the Member Bank's Affiliates
	2050.0.3.10.2	Special Rule for Noncommercial Lenders
	2050.0.3.11	Section 23A Ramifications
	2050.0.4	Remedial Action
	2050.0.5	Inspection Objectives
	2050.0.6	Inspection Procedures
	2050.0.7	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2060.0		Management Information Systems
2060.05		Policy Statement on the Internal Audit Function and Its Outsourcing
	2060.05.01	An Effective System of Internal Controls
	2060.05.02–	<i>Reserved</i>
	2060.05.04	
	2060.05.05	Application of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act to Nonpublic Banking Organizations
	2060.05.06	Interagency Policy Statement on the Internal Audit Function and Its Outsourcing
	2060.05.1	Internal Audit Function (Part I)
	2060.05.1.1	Director and Senior Management Responsibilities for Internal Audit
	2060.05.1.1.1	Internal Audit Placement and Structure Within the Organization
	2060.05.1.1.2	Internal Audit Management, Staffing, and Audit Quality
	2060.05.1.1.3	Internal Audit Frequency and Scope
	2060.05.1.1.4	Communication of Internal Findings to the Directors, Audit Committee, and Management
	2060.05.1.1.5	Contingency Planning
	2060.05.1.2	U.S. Operations of Foreign Banking Organizations
	2060.05.1.3	Internal Audit Systems and the Audit Function for Small Financial Institutions
	2060.05.2	Internal Audit Outsourcing Arrangements (Part II)
	2060.05.2.1	Examples of Internal Audit Outsourcing Arrangements
	2060.05.2.2	Additional Inspection and Examination Considerations for Internal Audit Outsourcing Arrangements
	2060.05.2.2.1	Management of the Outsourced Internal Audit Function
	2060.05.2.2.2	Communication of Outsourced Internal Audit Findings to Directors and Senior Management
	2060.05.2.3	Independence of the External Auditor
	2060.05.2.3.1	Agencies' Views on Independence
	2060.05.3	Independence of the Independent Public Accountant (Part III)
	2060.05.3.1	Applicability of the SEC's Auditor Independence Requirements
	2060.05.3.1.1	Institutions That Are Public Companies
	2060.05.3.1.2	Depository Institutions Subject to the Annual Audit and Reporting Requirements of Section 36 of the FDI Act
	2060.05.3.1.3	Institutions Not Subject to Section 36 of the FDI Act That Are Neither Public Companies Nor Subsidiaries of Public Companies
	2060.05.3.1.4	AICPA Guidance
	2060.05.4	Inspection Guidance (Part IV)
	2060.05.4.1	Review of Internal Audit Function and Outsourcing Arrangements
	2060.05.4.2	Inspection Concerns About the Adequacy of the Internal Audit Function
	2060.05.4.3	Concerns About the Independence of the Outsourcing Vendor

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2060.05.5	Inspection Objectives
	2060.05.6	Inspection Procedures
	2060.05.6.1	Internal Audit Function Inspection Procedures
	2060.05.6.2	Other Internal Audit Function Inspection Procedures
	2060.05.6.3	Additional Aspects of the Examiner's Review of an Outsourcing Arrangement
	2060.05.6.4	Assessment of Auditor Independence
	2060.05.6.5	Supplemental Procedures to Evaluate the Effectiveness of the Internal Audit Function
	2060.05.6.6	Continuous Monitoring between Inspections of Internal Audit
	2060.05.6.7	Evaluating the Ability to Rely on Internal Audit
	2060.05.6.8	Considerations for Consolidated Supervision
2060.07		Supplemental Policy Statement on the Internal Audit Function and its Outsourcing
	2060.07.1	Supplemental Policy Guidance
	2060.07.1.1	Enhanced Internal Audit Practices
	2060.07.1.1.1	Risk Analysis
	2060.07.1.1.2	Thematic Control Issues
	2060.07.1.1.3	Challenging Management and Policy
	2060.07.1.1.4	Infrastructure
	2060.07.1.1.5	Risk Tolerance
	2060.07.1.1.6	Governance and Strategic Objectives
	2060.07.1.2	Internal Audit Function (<i>Part I of the 2003 Policy Statement</i>)
	2060.07.1.2.1	Attributes of Internal Audit
	2060.07.1.2.2	Corporate Governance Considerations
	2060.07.1.2.3	The Adequacy of the Internal Audit Function's Processes
	2060.07.1.2.4	Internal Audit Performance and Monitoring Processes
	2060.07.1.3	Internal Audit Outsourcing Arrangements (<i>Part II of the 2003 Policy Statement</i>)
	2060.07.1.3.1	Vendor Competence
	2060.07.1.3.2	Contingency Planning
	2060.07.1.3.3	Quality of Audit Work
	2060.07.1.4	Independence Guidance for the Independent Public Accountant (<i>Part III of the 2003 Policy Statement</i>)
	2060.07.1.4.1	Depository Institutions Subject to the Annual Audit and Reporting Requirements of Section 36 of the FDI Act
	2060.07.1.5	Examination Guidance (<i>Part IV of the 2003 Policy Statement</i>)
	2060.07.1.5.1	Determining the Overall Effectiveness of Internal Audit
	2060.07.1.5.2	Relying on the Work Performed by Internal Audit
2060.1		Audit
	2060.1.2	External Auditors and the Release of Required Information
	2060.1.3	External Auditor Inquiries
	2060.1.4	Unsafe and Unsound Use of Limitation-of-Liability Provisions in External Audit Engagement Letters
	2060.1.4.1	Scope of the Advisory on Engagement Letters
	2060.1.4.2	External Audits and Their Engagement Letters

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2060.1.4.3	Limitation-of-Liability Provisions
	2060.1.4.4	Auditor Independence
	2060.1.4.5	Alternative Dispute-Resolution Agreements and Jury-Trial Waivers
	2060.1.4.6	The Advisory's Conclusion
	2060.1.4.7	Examples of Unsafe and Unsound Limitation-of-Liability Provisions
	2060.1.4.8	Frequently Asked Questions on the Application of the SEC's Auditor-Independence Rules
	2060.1.5	Inspection Objectives
	2060.1.6	Inspection Procedures
	2060.1.7	<i>Reserved</i>
	2060.1.8	Overview: Interagency Advisory on External Audits of Internationally Active U.S. Financial Institutions
	2060.1.8.1	Appendix A—Interagency Advisory on External Audits of Internationally Active U.S. Financial Institutions
2060.2		Budget
	2060.2.1	Inspection Objectives
	2060.2.2	Inspection Procedures
2060.3		Records and Statements
	2060.3.1	Inspection Objectives
	2060.3.2	Inspection Procedures
2060.4		Structure and Reporting
	2060.4.1	Inspection Objectives
	2060.4.2	Inspection Procedures
	2060.4.3	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2060.5		Insurance
	2060.5.1	Introduction
	2060.5.2	Banker's Blanket Bond
	2060.5.3	Types of Blanket Bonds
	2060.5.4	Determining the Coverage Needed
	2060.5.5	Notification of Loss
	2060.5.6	Directors' and Officers' Liability Insurance
	2060.5.7	Inspection Objectives
	2060.5.8	Inspection Procedures
2065.1		Accounting, Reporting, and Disclosure Issues— Nonaccrual Loans and Restructured Debt
	2065.1.1	Cash-Basis Income Recognition on Nonaccrual Assets
	2065.1.2	Nonaccrual Assets Subject to SFAS 15 and SFAS 114 Restructurings
	2065.1.3	Restructurings Resulting in a Market Interest Rate
	2065.1.4	Nonaccrual Treatment of Multiple Loans to One Borrower

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2065.1.4.1	Troubled-Debt Restructuring—Returning a Multiple-Note Structure to Accrual Status
	2065.1.4.2	Nonaccrual Loans That Have Demonstrated Sustained Contractual Performance
	2065.1.5	Acquisition of Nonaccrual Assets
	2065.1.6	Treatment of Nonaccrual Loans with Partial Charge-Offs
	2065.1.7	In-Substance Foreclosures
	2065.1.8	Liquidation Values of Real Estate Loans
2065.2		Determining an Adequate Level for the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses
	2065.2.1	Inspection Objectives
	2065.2.2	Inspection Procedures
2065.3		Maintenance of an Appropriate Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (ALLL)
	2065.3.0	Overview of the ALLL Policy Statement
	2065.3.1	2006 Interagency Policy Statement on the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses
	2065.3.1.1	Nature and Purpose of the ALLL
	2065.3.1.2	Responsibility of the Board of Directors and Management
	2065.3.1.2.1	Appropriate ALLL Level
	2065.3.1.2.2	Factors to Consider in the Estimation of Credit Losses
	2065.3.1.2.3	Measurement of Estimated Credit Losses
	2065.3.1.2.4	Analyzing the Overall Measurement of the ALLL
	2065.3.1.2.5	Estimated Credit Losses in Credit-Related Accounts
	2065.3.1.3	Examiner Responsibilities
	2065.3.1.4	ALLL Level Reflected in Regulatory Reports
	2065.3.1.5	Appendix 1—Loan-Review Systems
	2065.3.1.5.1	Loan Classification or Credit Grading Systems
	2065.3.1.5.2	Elements of Loan-Review Systems
	2065.3.1.6	Appendix 2—International Transfer Risk Considerations
2065.4		ALLL Methodologies and Documentation
	2065.4.1	2001 Policy Statement on ALLL Methodologies and Documentation
	2065.4.1.1	Documentation Standards
	2065.4.1.2	Policies and Procedures
	2065.4.1.3	Methodology
	2065.4.1.3.1	Documentation of ALLL Methodology in Written Policies and Procedures
	2065.4.1.4	ALLL Under FAS 114
	2065.4.1.5	ALLL Under FAS 5
	2065.4.1.5.1	Segmenting the Portfolio
	2065.4.1.5.2	Estimating Loss on Groups of Loans
	2065.4.1.6	Consolidating the Loss Estimates
	2065.4.1.7	Validating the ALLL Methodology
	2065.4.1.7.1	Supporting Documentation for the Validation Process

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2065.4.1.8	Appendix—Application of GAAP
	2065.4.2	Inspection Objectives
	2065.4.3	Inspection Procedures
2065.5		ALLL Estimation Practices for Loans Secured by Junior Liens
	2065.5.1	ALLL Estimation Practices for Loans and Lines of Credit Secured by Junior Liens on 1–4 Family Residential Properties
	2065.5.1.1	Responsibilities of Management
	2065.5.1.1.1	Consideration of All Significant Factors
	2065.5.1.1.2	Adequate Segmentation
	2065.5.1.1.3	Qualitative or Environmental Factor Adjustments
	2065.5.1.1.4	Charge-Off and Nonaccrual Policies
	2065.5.1.1.5	Responsibilities of Examiners
	2065.5.2	Inspection Objectives
	2065.5.3	Inspection Procedures
2068.0		Sound Incentive Compensation Policies
	2068.0.1	Scope of Application
	2068.0.2	Principles of a Sound Incentive Compensation System
	2068.0.2.1	Principle 1: Balanced Risk-Taking Incentives
	2068.0.2.2	Principle 2: Compatibility with Effective Controls and Risk-Management
	2068.0.2.3	Principle 3: Strong Corporate Governance
	2068.0.3	Conclusion on Sound Incentive Compensation
2070.0		Taxes—Consolidated Tax Filing
	2070.0.1	Interagency Policy Statement on Income Tax Allocation in a Holding Company Structure
	2070.0.1.1	Tax-Sharing Agreements
	2070.0.1.2	Measurement of Current and Deferred Income Taxes
	2070.0.1.3	Tax Payments to the Parent Company
	2070.0.1.4	Tax Refunds from the Parent Company
	2070.0.1.5	Income-Tax-Forgiveness Transactions
	2070.0.2	Qualifying Subchapter S Corporations
	2070.0.3	Inspection Objectives
	2070.0.4	Inspection Procedures
	2070.0.5	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2080.0		Funding—Introduction
2080.05		Bank Holding Company Funding and Liquidity
	2080.05.1	Funding and Liquidity
	2080.05.2	Additional Supervisory Considerations
	2080.05.3	Examiner’s Application of Principles in Evaluating Liquidity and in Formulating Corrective Action Programs

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2080.1		Commercial Paper and Other Short-Term Uninsured Debt Obligations and Securities
	2080.1.1	Meeting the SEC Criteria
	2080.1.1.1	Nine-Month Maturity Standard
	2080.1.1.2	Prime Quality
	2080.1.1.3	Current Transactions
	2080.1.1.4	Sales to Institutional Investors
	2080.1.2	Marketing of Commercial Paper
	2080.1.3	Thrift Notes and Similar Debt Instruments
	2080.1.4	Other Short-Term Indebtedness
	2080.1.5	Current Portion of Long-Term Debt
	2080.1.6	Inspection Objectives
	2080.1.7	Inspection Procedures
2080.2		Long-Term Debt
	2080.2.1	Convertible Subordinated Debenture
	2080.2.2	Convertible Preferred Debenture
	2080.2.3	Negative Covenants
	2080.2.4	Inspection Objectives
	2080.2.5	Inspection Procedures
2080.3		Equity
	2080.3.1	Preferred Stock
	2080.3.2	Inspection Objectives
	2080.3.3	Inspection Procedures
2080.4		Retention of Earnings
	2080.4.1	Payment of Dividends by Bank Subsidiaries
	2080.4.1.1	Net Income Test
	2080.4.1.2	Undivided Profits Test
2080.5		Pension Funding and Employee Stock Option Plans
	2080.5.1	Stock Option Programs
	2080.5.2	Employee Stock Ownership Plans (ESOPs)
	2080.5.2.1	Accounting Guidelines for Leveraged ESOP Transactions
	2080.5.2.2	Fiduciary Standards under ERISA Pertaining to ESOPs
	2080.5.3	Status of ESOPs under the BHC Act
	2080.5.4	Inspection Considerations
2080.6		Bank Holding Company Funding from Sweep Accounts
	2080.6.1	Funding by Sweeping Deposit Accounts
2090.0		Control and Ownership—General

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2090.0.05	Definitions
	2090.0.1	Conclusive Presumptions of Control
	2090.0.2	Direct Control
	2090.0.3	Indirect Control
	2090.0.4	Rebuttable Presumptions of Control
	2090.0.4.1	Regulation Y Determinants of Control
	2090.0.4.2	Other Presumptions of Control
	2090.0.5	Procedures for Determining Control
	2090.0.6	Inspection Objectives
	2090.0.7	Inspection Procedures
	2090.0.8	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2090.05		Qualified Family Partnerships
	2090.05.1	Qualified Family Partnership Exemption
	2090.05.2	Assignment of Economic Partnership Interest that is a QFP
2090.1		Change in Control
	2090.1.1	Commitments and Conditions for Approval
	2090.1.2	Completion of the Transaction
	2090.1.3	Information to Be Included in Notices
	2090.1.4	Transactions Requiring Submission of Prior Notice
	2090.1.4.1	Rebuttable Presumption of Control
	2090.1.4.2	Rebuttable Presumption of Concerted Action
	2090.1.5	Transactions Not Requiring Any Notice
	2090.1.6	Transactions Not Requiring Prior Notice
	2090.1.7	Unauthorized or Undisclosed Changes in Bank Control
	2090.1.8	Changes or Replacement of an Institution's Chief Executive Officer or Any Director
	2090.1.9	Disapproval of Changes in Control
	2090.1.10	Additional Reporting Requirements
	2090.1.11	Stock Redemptions
	2090.1.12	Corrective Action
	2090.1.13	Inspection Objectives
	2090.1.14	Inspection Procedures
2090.2		BHC Formations
	2090.2.1	Formation of a Bank Holding Company and Changes in Ownership
	2090.2.2	History of the Policy Statement on the Formation of Small Bank Holding Companies
	2090.2.3	Small Bank Holding Company and Savings and Loan Holding Company Policy Statement
	2090.2.3.1	Applicability of Policy Statement
	2090.2.3.2	Ongoing Requirements
	2090.2.3.2.1	Reduction in Parent Company Leverage
	2090.2.3.2.2	Capital Adequacy
	2090.2.3.2.3	Dividend Restrictions
	2090.2.3.3	Core Requirements for All Applicants
	2090.2.3.3.1	Minimum Down Payment

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2090.2.3.3.2	Ability to Reduce Parent Company Leverage
	2090.2.3.4	Additional Application Requirements for Expedited Processing
	2090.2.3.4.1	Expedited Notices under Sections 225.14 and 225.23 of Regulation Y
	2090.2.3.4.2	Waiver of Stock-Redemption Filing
	2090.2.4	Inspection Objectives
	2090.2.5	Inspection Procedures
	2090.2.6	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2090.3		Treasury Stock Redemptions
	2090.3.1	Change in Control Act Considerations
	2090.3.2	Inspection Objectives
	2090.3.3	Inspection Procedures
2090.4		Policy Statements on Equity Investments in Banks and Bank Holding Companies
	2090.4.1	Overview and Guiding Principles
	2090.4.2	Board's 1982 Policy Statement on Nonvoting Equity Investments by Bank Holding Companies
	2090.4.2.1	Statutory and Regulatory Provisions
	2090.4.2.2	Review of Agreements
	2090.4.2.3	Provisions that Avoid Control
	2090.4.2.4	Review by the Board
	2090.4.3	Activities of Banking Organizations and Board Determinations Subsequent to the 1982 Policy Statement
	2090.4.4	Board's 2008 Policy Statement on Equity Investments in Banks and Bank Holding Companies
	2090.4.4.1	Specific Approaches to Avoid Control
	2090.4.4.1.1	Director Representation
	2090.4.4.1.2	Total Equity
	2090.4.4.1.3	Consultations with Management
	2090.4.4.1.4	Other Indicia of Control
	2090.4.4.1.4.1	Business Relationships
	2090.4.4.1.4.2	Covenants
	2090.4.4.2	Conclusion of the 2008 Policy Statement
	2090.4.5	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2090.5		Acquisitions of Bank Shares through Fiduciary Accounts
2090.6		Divestiture Control Determinants
	2090.6.05	Control Determinants
	2090.6.1	Inspection Objectives
	2090.6.2	Inspection Procedures
	2090.6.3	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2090.7		Nonbank Banks
	2090.7.1	CEBA and FIRREA Provisions for Nonbank Banks
	2090.7.2	Retaining Grandfather Rights Under Section 4(f) of the BHC Act
	2090.7.3	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2090.8		Control and Ownership—Liability of Commonly Controlled Depository Institutions
	2090.8.1	Five-Year Protection from Liability (5-Year Transition Rule)
	2090.8.2	Cross-Guarantee Provisions
	2090.8.3	Exclusions for Institutions Acquired in Debt Collections
2092.0		<i>Reserved</i>
2093.0		Control and Ownership—Shareholder Protection Arrangements
	2093.0.1	Shareholder Protection Arrangements—Supervisory Issues
	2093.0.2	Supervisory Oversight
2100.0		International Banking Activities
	2100.0.1	Foreign Operations of U.S. Banking Organizations
	2100.0.2	Edge Act and Agreement Corporations
	2100.0.3	Supervision of Foreign Banking Organizations

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2110.0		Formal Corrective Actions
	2110.0.1	Statutory Tools for Formal Supervisory Action
	2110.0.2	Types of Corrective Actions
	2110.0.2.1	Cease-and-Desist Orders
	2110.0.2.2	Temporary Cease-and-Desist Orders
	2110.0.2.3	Written Agreements
	2110.0.2.4	Prohibition and Removal Authority
	2110.0.2.5	Termination of Nonbank Activity
	2110.0.2.6	Violations of Final Orders and Written Agreements
	2110.0.2.7	Civil Money Penalties
	2110.0.2.8	Administration of Formal Actions
	2110.0.2.8.1	Publication of Final Orders
	2110.0.2.8.2	Public Hearings
	2110.0.2.8.3	Subpoena Power
	2110.0.3	Indemnification Payments and Golden Parachute Payments
	2110.0.3.1	Indemnification Agreements and Payments
	2110.0.3.2	Golden Parachute Payments
	2110.0.4	Disciplinary Actions Against Accountants and Accounting Firms Performing Certain Audit Services
	2110.0.5	Appointment of Directors and Senior Executive Officers
2120.0		Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and Federal Election Campaign Act
	2120.0.1	Introduction
	2120.0.2	Summary of the Federal Election Campaign Act
	2120.0.3	Banks and the FECA
	2120.0.4	Contributions and Expenditures
	2120.0.5	Separate Segregated Funds and Political Committees
	2120.0.6	Inspection Objectives
	2120.0.7	Inspection Procedures
	2120.0.8	Apparent Violations of the Statutes
	2120.0.9	Advisory Opinions
2122.0		Internal Credit-Risk Ratings at Large Banking Organizations
	2122.0.1	Application to Large Bank Holding Companies
	2122.0.2	Sound Practices in Function and Design of Internal Rating Systems
	2122.0.3	Sound Practices in Assigning and Validating Internal Risk Ratings
	2122.0.4	Application of Internal Risk Ratings to Internal Management and Analysis
	2122.0.4.1	Limits and Approval Requirements
	2122.0.4.2	Reporting to Management on Credit-Risk Profile of the Portfolio
	2122.0.4.3	Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses
	2122.0.4.4	Pricing and Profitability
	2122.0.4.5	Internal Allocation of Capital
	2122.0.5	Inspection Objectives

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2122.0.6	Inspection Procedures
2124.0		Risk-Focused Safety-and-Soundness Inspections
	2124.0.1	Full Scope Inspections and Transaction Testing
	2124.0.2	Risk-Focused Inspections
	2124.0.2.1	Risk Assessment
	2124.0.2.2	Preparation of a Scope Memorandum
	2124.0.2.3	On-Site Procedures
	2124.0.2.4	Evaluation of Audit Function as Part of Assessment of Internal Control Structure
	2124.0.2.5	Evaluation of Overall Risk-Management Process
	2124.0.2.6	Evaluation of Compliance with Laws and Regulations
	2124.0.2.7	Documentation of Supervisory Findings
	2124.0.2.8	Communication of Supervisory Findings
	2124.0.3	Inspection Objectives
	2124.0.4	Inspection Procedures
	2124.0.5	Appendix A—Definitions of Risk Types Evaluated at Inspections
2124.01		Risk-Focused Supervision Framework for Large Complex Banking Organizations
	2124.01.1	Inspection Approach for Risk-Focused Supervision
	2124.01.1.1	Risk-Focused Supervisory Objectives
	2124.01.1.2	Key Elements of the Risk-Focused Framework
	2124.01.1.3	Banking Organizations Covered by the Framework
	2124.01.1.3.1	Foreign Institutions
	2124.01.1.3.2	Nonbank Subsidiaries of Domestic Institutions
	2124.01.1.3.3	Edge Act Corporations
	2124.01.1.3.4	Specialty Areas Covered by the Framework
	2124.01.2	Coordination of Supervisory Activities
	2124.01.2.1	Responsible Reserve Bank
	2124.01.2.2	RRBs Working with Local Reserve Banks
	2124.01.2.2.1	RRB Defined
	2124.01.2.2.2	Duties of RRB
	2124.01.2.2.3	Sharing of RRB Duties
	2124.01.2.3	Central Point of Contact
	2124.01.2.4	Sharing of Information
	2124.01.2.5	Coordination with Other Supervisors
	2124.01.3	Functional Approach and Targeted Inspections
	2124.01.4	Overview of the Process and Products
	2124.01.5	Understanding the Institution
	2124.01.5.1	Sources of Information
	2124.01.5.2	Preparation of the Institutional Overview
	2124.01.6	Assessing the Institution's Risks
	2124.01.6.1	Assessment of the Overall Risk Environment
	2124.01.6.1.1	Internal Risk-Management Evaluation
	2124.01.6.1.2	Supervision Program for Consumer Compliance Risk Assessment at BHCs
	2124.01.6.1.3	Adequacy of Information Technology Systems
	2124.01.6.2	Preparation of the Risk Matrix
	2124.01.6.2.1	Identification of Significant Activities

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2124.01.6.2.2	Type and Level of Inherent Risk of Significant Activities
	2124.01.6.2.3	Risk-Management Adequacy Assessment for Significant Activities
	2124.01.6.2.4	Composite Risk Assessment of Significant Activities
	2124.01.6.2.5	Overall Composite Risk Assessment
	2124.01.6.2.6	Preparation of the Risk Assessment
	2124.01.7	Planning and Scheduling Supervisory Activities
	2124.01.7.1	Preparation of the Supervisory Plan
	2124.01.7.2	Preparation of the Inspection or Examination Program
	2124.01.8	Defining Inspection or Examination Activities
	2124.01.8.1	Scope Memorandum
	2124.01.8.2	Entry Letter
	2124.01.9	Performing Inspection or Examination Procedures
	2124.01.10	Reporting the Findings
	2124.01.11	Appendix A—Risk-Focused Supervisory Letters with BHC Supervision Manual Section Number References
	2124.01.12	Appendix B—Risk-Assessment Questionnaire
	2124.01.13	Appendix C—Federal Reserve Bank Cover Letter and BHC Inspection Questionnaire
2124.02–2124.04		<i>Reserved</i>
2124.05		Consolidated Supervision Framework for Large Financial Institutions
	2124.05.1	Framework Applicability
	2124.05.2	Framework Overview
	2124.05.3	Enhancing Resiliency of a Firm
	2124.05.3.1	Capital and Liquidity Planning and Positions
	2124.05.3.2	Corporate Governance
	2124.05.3.3	Recovery Planning
	2124.05.4	Reducing the Impact of a Firm’s Failure
	2124.05.4.1	Management of Critical Operations
	2124.05.4.2	Support for Banking Offices
	2124.05.4.3	Resolution Planning
	2124.05.4.4	Additional Macroprudential Supervisory Approaches to Address Risks to Financial Stability
	2124.05.5	Conduct of Supervisory Activities
	2124.05.6	Appendix A
	2124.05.6.1	Risk Transfer Considerations When Assessing Capital Adequacy
	2124.05.7	Managing Foreign Exchange Settlement Risks for Physically Settled Transactions
2124.07		Compliance Risk-Management Programs and Oversight at Large Banking Organizations with Complex Compliance Profiles
	2124.07.1	Firmwide Compliance Risk Management and Oversight
	2124.07.1.1	Overview
	2124.07.1.2	Federal Reserve Supervisory Policies on Compliance Risk Management and Oversight
	2124.07.1.2.1	Large Banking Organizations with Complex Compliance Profiles

Sections	Subsections	Title
	2124.07.1.2.2	Large Banking Organizations with Less-Complex Compliance Profiles
	2124.07.1.2.3	Foreign Banking Organizations
	2124.07.2	Independence of Compliance Staff
	2124.07.3	Compliance Monitoring and Testing
	2124.07.3.1	Risk Assessments and Monitoring and Testing Programs
	2124.07.3.2	Testing
	2124.07.4	Responsibilities of the Board of Directors and Senior Management
	2124.07.4.1	Boards of Directors
	2124.07.4.2	Senior Management
2124.1		Assessment of Information Technology in Risk-Focused Supervision
	2124.1.1	Changing Role of Information Technology
	2124.1.2	Implications for Risk-Focused Supervision
	2124.1.3	Framework for Evaluating Information Technology
	2124.1.4	Aligning Examiner Staffing with the Technology Environment
	2124.1.5	Inspection Objectives
	2124.1.6	Inspection Procedures
	2124.1.7	Appendix A—Examples of Information Technology Elements That Should Be Considered in Assessing Business Risks of Particular Situations
2124.2		<i>Reserved</i>
2124.3		Managing Outsourcing Risk
2124.4		Information Security Standards
	2124.4.1	Interagency Guidelines Establishing Information Security Standards
	2124.4.1.1	Disposal of Customer and Consumer Information
	2124.4.2	Response Programs for Unauthorized Access to Customer Information and Customer Notice
	2124.4.2.1	Response Programs
	2124.4.2.1.1	Components of a Response Program
	2124.4.2.2	Customer Notice
	2124.4.2.2.1	Standard for Providing Notice
	2124.4.2.2.2	Sensitive Customer Information
	2124.4.2.2.3	Affected Customers
	2124.4.2.2.4	Content of Customer Notice
	2124.4.2.2.5	Delivery of Customer Notice
	2124.4.3	Inspection Objective
	2124.4.4	Inspection Procedures
	2124.4.5	Appendix A—Interagency Guidelines Establishing Information Security Standards
2124.5		Identity Theft Red Flags and Address Discrepancies
	2124.5.1	Identity Theft Red Flags Prevention Program
	2124.5.1.1	Risk Assessment

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2124.5.1.2	Elements of the Program
	2124.5.1.3	Guidelines
	2124.5.1.3.1	Identification of Red Flags
	2124.5.1.3.2	Categories of Red Flags
	2124.5.1.3.3	Detect the Program's Red Flags
	2124.5.1.3.4	Respond Appropriately to any Detected Red Flags
	2124.5.1.3.5	Periodically Updating the Program's Relevant Red Flags
	2124.5.1.4	Administration of Program
	2124.5.2	Inspection Objectives
	2124.5.3	Inspection Procedures
2125.0		Trading Activities of Banking Organizations— Risk Management and Internal Controls
	2125.0.1	Oversight of the Risk Management Process
	2125.0.1.1	Board of Directors' Approval of Risk Management Policies
	2125.0.1.2	Senior Management's Risk Management Responsibilities
	2125.0.1.3	Independent Risk Management Functions
	2125.0.2	The Risk Management Process
	2125.0.2.1	Risk Measurement Systems
	2125.0.2.2	Limiting Risks
	2125.0.2.3	Reporting
	2125.0.2.4	Management Evaluation and Review of the Risk Management Process
	2125.0.2.5	Managing Specific Risks
	2125.0.2.5.1	Credit Risks
	2125.0.2.5.2	Market Risk
	2125.0.2.5.3	Liquidity Risk
	2125.0.2.5.4	Operational Risk, Legal Risk, and Business Practices
	2125.0.3	Internal Controls and Audits
2126.0		Model Risk Management
	2126.0.1	Introduction—Part I
	2126.0.2	Purpose and Scope—Part II
	2126.0.3	Overview of Model Risk Management—Part III
	2126.0.4	Model Development, Implementation, and Use—Part IV
	2126.0.4.1	Model Development and Implementation
	2126.0.4.2	Model Use
	2126.0.5	Model Validation—Part V
	2126.0.5.1	Key Elements of Comprehensive Validation
	2126.0.5.1.1	Evaluation of Conceptual Soundness
	2126.0.5.1.2	Ongoing Monitoring
	2126.0.5.1.3	Outcomes Analysis
	2126.0.5.2	Validation of Vendor and Other Third-Party Products
	2126.0.6	Governance, Policies, and Controls—Part VI
	2126.0.6.1	Board of Directors and Senior Management
	2126.0.6.2	Policies and Procedures
	2126.0.6.3	Roles and Responsibilities
	2126.0.6.4	Internal Audit
	2126.0.6.5	External Resources

Sections	Subsections	Title
2126.1	2126.0.6.6	Model Inventory
	2126.0.6.7	Documentation
	2126.0.7	Conclusion—Part VII
		Investment Securities and End-User Derivatives Activities
	2126.1.0	Sound Risk-Management Practices for Portfolio Investment
	2126.1.1	Supervisory Policy Statement on Investment Securities and End-User Derivatives Activities
	2126.1.1.1	Purpose
	2126.1.1.2	Scope
	2126.1.1.3	Board and Senior Management Oversight
	2126.1.1.4	Risk-Management Process
	2126.1.1.4.1	Policies, Procedures, and Limits
	2126.1.1.4.2	Risk Identification, Measurement, and Reporting
	2126.1.1.4.3	Internal Controls
	2126.1.1.5	Risks of Investment Activities
	2126.1.1.5.1	Market Risk
	2126.1.1.5.2	Credit Risk
	2126.1.1.5.3	Liquidity Risk
	2126.1.1.5.4	Operational (Transaction) Risk
	2126.1.1.5.5	Legal Risk
2126.2		Investing in Securities without Reliance on Ratings of Nationally Recognized Statistical Rating Organizations
	2126.2.1	Appendix 1—OCC Guidance on Due Diligence Requirements in Determining Whether Securities are Eligible for Investment.
2126.3		Counterparty Credit Risk Management Systems
	2126.3.1	Fundamental Elements of Counterparty-Credit-Risk Management
	2126.3.2	Targeting Supervisory Resources
	2126.3.3	Assessment of Counterparty Creditworthiness
	2126.3.4	Credit-Risk-Exposure Measurement
	2126.3.5	Credit Enhancements
	2126.3.6	Credit-Risk-Exposure Limit-Setting and Monitoring Systems
	2126.3.7	Inspection Objectives
	2126.3.8	Inspection Procedures
2126.5		Procedures for a Banking Entity to Request an Extended Transition Period for Illiquid Funds
	2126.5.1	Volcker Rule’s Background
	2126.5.2	Requirements for Submitting Requests
	2126.5.3	Procedures for Filing an Extension Request
2127.0		Interest-Rate Risk—Risk Management and Internal Controls
	2127.0.1	Assessing the Management and Internal Controls Over Interest-Rate Risk

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2127.0.2	Joint Agency Policy Statement: Interest-Rate Risk
	2127.0.3	Interagency Advisory on Interest Rate Risk Management
2128.0		Structured Notes
	2128.0.1	Supervisory Policy—Structured Notes
2128.02		Asset Securitization
	2128.02.1	Overview of Asset Securitization
	2128.02.2	Securitization Process
	2128.02.3	Credit Enhancement
	2128.02.4	Structure of Asset-Backed Securities
	2128.02.5	Supervisory Considerations Regarding Asset Securitization
	2128.02.6	Policy Statement on Investment Securities and End-User Derivatives Activities
	2128.02.6.1	Mortgage-Derivative Products
	2128.02.7	Risk-Based Capital Provisions Affecting Asset Securitization
	2128.02.7.1	Assigning Risk Weights
	2128.02.7.2	Recourse Obligations
	2128.02.7.2.1	Residuals
	2128.02.7.2.2	Credit-Equivalent Amounts and Risk Weights of Recourse Obligations and Direct-Credit Substitutes
	2128.02.7.2.3	Low-Level-Recourse Treatment
	2128.02.7.2.4	Standby Letters of Credit
	2128.02.8	Concentration Limits Imposed on Residual Interests
	2128.02.9	Inspection Objectives
	2128.02.10	Inspection Procedures
2128.03		Credit-Supported and Asset-Backed Commercial Paper
	2128.03.1	Credit-Supported and Asset-Backed Commercial Paper as an Alternative Funding Source
	2128.03.2	Commercial Bank Involvement in Credit-Enhanced and Asset-Backed Commercial Paper
	2128.03.3	Risk-Based Capital Asset-Backed Commercial Paper Program
	2128.03.3.1	Liquidity Facilities Supporting ABCP
	2128.03.3.2	Overlapping Exposures to an ABCP Program
	2128.03.3.3	Asset-Quality Test
	2128.03.3.4	Market Risk Capital Requirements for ABCP Programs
	2128.03.4	Board-of-Directors Policies Pertaining to Credit-Enhanced or Asset-Backed Commercial Paper
	2128.03.5	Inspection Objectives
	2128.03.6	Inspection Procedures
2128.04		Implicit Recourse Provided to Asset Securitizations
	2128.04.1	Inspection Objectives
	2128.04.2	Inspection Procedures

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2128.05		Securitization Covenants Linked to Supervisory Actions or Thresholds
	2128.05.1	Inspection Objectives
	2128.05.2	Inspection Procedures
2128.06		Valuation of Retained Interests and Risk Management of Securitization Activities
	2128.06.05	Retained Interests from Securitization Activities
	2128.06.1	Asset Securitization
	2128.06.2	Independent Risk-Management Function
	2128.06.3	Valuation and Modeling Processes
	2128.06.4	Use of Outside Parties
	2128.06.5	Internal Controls
	2128.06.6	Audit Function or Internal Review
	2128.06.7	Regulatory Reporting of Retained Interests
	2128.06.8	Market Discipline and Disclosures
	2128.06.9	Risk-Based Capital for Recourse and Low-Level-Recourse Transactions

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2128.06.10	Concentration Limits Imposed on Retained Interests
	2128.06.11	Inspection Objectives
	2128.06.12	Inspection Procedures
2128.07		<i>Reserved</i>
2128.08		Subprime Lending
	2128.08.1	Interagency Guidance on Subprime Lending
	2128.08.1.1	Risk Management
	2128.08.1.2	Examination Review and Analysis
	2128.08.1.2.1	Transaction-Level Testing
	2128.08.1.3	Adequacy of the ALLL
	2128.08.1.3.1	New Entrants to the Business
	2128.08.1.3.2	Pools of Subprime Loans—Not Classified
	2128.08.1.4	Classification Guidelines for Subprime Lending
	2128.08.1.4.1	Individual Loans
	2128.08.1.4.2	Portfolios
	2128.08.1.5	Required Documentation for Cure Programs
	2128.08.1.6	Predatory or Abusive Lending Practices
	2128.08.1.7	Capitalization
	2128.08.1.7.1	Stress Testing
	2128.08.1.8	Subprime-Lending Examiner Responsibilities
	2128.08.1.9	Appendix—Questions and Answers for Examiners Regarding the Expanded Guidance for Subprime- Lending Programs
	2128.08.1.9.1	Applicability of the Guidance
	2128.08.1.9.2	Subprime Characteristics
	2128.08.1.9.3	Capital Guidance
	2128.08.2	Inspection Objectives
	2128.08.3	Inspection Procedures
	2128.09	Elevated-Risk Complex Structured Finance Activities
	2128.09.1	Interagency Statement on Sound Practices Concerning Elevated-Risk Complex Structured Finance Activities
	2128.09.2	Scope and Purpose of Statement
	2128.09.3	Identification and Review of Elevated-Risk Complex Structured Finance Transactions
	2128.09.3.1	Identifying Elevated-Risk CSFTs
	2128.09.3.2	Approval and Documentation Process for Elevated-Risk CSFTs
	2128.09.3.2.1	Due Diligence
	2128.09.3.2.2	Approval Process
	2128.09.3.2.3	Documentation
	2128.09.3.3	Other Risk-Management Principles for Elevated-Risk CSFTs
	2128.09.3.3.1	General Business Ethics
	2128.09.3.3.2	Reporting
	2128.09.3.3.3	Monitoring Compliance with Internal Policies and Procedures
	2128.09.3.3.4	Audit
	2128.09.3.3.5	Training
	2128.09.4	Conclusion

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
2129.0		Credit Derivatives
	2129.0.1	Supervisory and Examiner Guidance
	2129.0.2	Types of Credit Derivatives
	2129.0.2.1	Credit-Default Swaps
	2129.0.2.2	Total-Rate-of-Return Swaps
	2129.0.3	Other Supervisory Issues
	2129.0.3.1	Credit Exposure
	2129.0.3.2	Concentrations of Credit
	2129.0.3.3	Classifications of Assets
	2129.0.3.4	Transactions Involving Affiliates
	2129.0.4	Inspection Objectives
	2129.0.5	Inspection Procedures
2129.05		Risk and Capital Adequacy Management of the Exposures Arising from Secondary-Market Credit Activities
	2129.05.05	Risk Identification and Risk Management of Secondary Market Credit Activities
	2129.05.1	Credit Risks in Secondary-Market Credit Activities
	2129.05.1.1	Loan Syndications
	2129.05.1.2	Credit Derivatives
	2129.05.1.3	Recourse Obligations, Direct Credit Substitutes, and Liquidity Facilities
	2129.05.1.3.1	Recourse Obligations
	2129.05.1.3.2	Direct Credit Substitutes
	2129.05.1.3.3	Liquidity Facilities
	2129.05.1.4	Asset Securitization Structures
	2129.05.2	Reputational Risks
	2129.05.3	Liquidity Risks
	2129.05.4	Incorporating the Risks of Secondary-Market Credit Activities into Risk Management
	2129.05.4.1	Board of Directors and Senior Management Responsibilities
	2129.05.4.2	Management Information and Risk-Measurement Systems
	2129.05.4.3	System of Internal Controls
	2129.05.5	Stress Testing
	2129.05.6	Capital Adequacy
	2129.05.7	Inspection Objectives
	2129.05.8	Inspection Procedures
2130.0		Futures, Forward, and Option Contracts
	2130.0.1	Introduction
	2130.0.2	Definitions
	2130.0.3	Financial Contract Transactions
	2130.0.3.1	Markets and Contract Trading
	2130.0.3.1.1	Forward Contracts
	2130.0.3.1.2	Standby Contracts
	2130.0.3.1.3	Futures Contracts
	2130.0.4	Margin Requirements
	2130.0.4.1	Variation Margin Calls

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2130.0.5	The Delivery Process
	2130.0.6	Mechanics and Operation of Futures Exchanges
	2130.0.7	Comparison of Futures, Forward, and Standby Contracts
	2130.0.8	Option Contracts
	2130.0.8.1	Other Options
	2130.0.8.1.1	Stock Index Options
	2130.0.8.1.2	Foreign Currency Options
	2130.0.8.2	Caps, Floors, and Collars
	2130.0.9	Regulatory Framework
	2130.0.10	Examples of Contract Strategies
	2130.0.10.1	The Mortgage Banking Price Hedge
	2130.0.10.2	Basis
	2130.0.10.3	Trading Account Short Hedge
	2130.0.10.3.1	Example 1: A Perfect Short Hedge
	2130.0.10.4	Long Hedge
	2130.0.10.4.1	Evaluation of the Hedge
	2130.0.10.5	Using Options to Create an Interest Rate Floor
	2130.0.10.6	Hedging a Borrowing with an Interest Rate Cap
	2130.0.11	Asset–Liability Management
	2130.0.12	Inspection Objectives
	2130.0.13	Inspection Procedures
	2130.0.13.1	Evaluating the Risks of Contract Activities
	2130.0.13.2	Reviewing Financial Contract Positions
	2130.0.13.3	Factors to Consider in Evaluating Overall Risk
	2130.0.13.4	Contract Liquidity
	2130.0.13.5	Relationship to Banking Activities
	2130.0.13.6	Parties Executing or Taking the Contra Side of a Financial Contract
	2130.0.14	Accounting for Futures Contracts
	2130.0.14.1	Performance Bonds under Futures Contracts
	2130.0.14.2	Valuation of Open Positions
	2130.0.14.3	Criteria for Hedge Accounting Treatment
	2130.0.14.4	Gains and Losses from Monthly Contract Valuations of Futures Contracts That Qualify as Hedges
	2130.0.14.5	Gains and Losses from Monthly Contract Valuations of Futures Contracts That <i>Do Not</i> Qualify as Hedges
	2130.0.15	Preparing Inspection Reports
	2130.0.16	Internal Controls and Internal Audit
	2130.0.16.1	Internal Controls
	2130.0.16.2	Internal Audit
	2130.0.17	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2140.0		Securities Lending
	2140.0.1	Securities Lending Market
	2140.0.2	Definitions of Capacity
	2140.0.3	Guidelines
	2140.0.3.1	Recordkeeping
	2140.0.3.2	Administrative Procedures
	2140.0.3.3	Credit Analysis and Approval of Borrowers
	2140.0.3.4	Credit and Concentration Limits

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2140.0.3.5	Collateral Management
	2140.0.3.6	Cash as Collateral
	2140.0.3.7	Letters of Credit as Collateral
	2140.0.3.8	Written Agreements
	2140.0.3.9	Use of Finders
	2140.0.3.10	Employee Benefit Plans
	2140.0.3.11	Indemnification
	2140.0.4	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2150.0		Repurchase Transactions
	2150.0.1	Credit Policy Guidelines
	2150.0.1.1	Dealings with Unregulated Securities Dealers
	2150.0.2	Guidelines for Controlling Repurchase Agreement Collateral
	2150.0.2.1	Confirmations
	2150.0.2.2	Control of Securities
	2150.0.2.3	Margin Requirements
	2150.0.2.4	Overcollateralization
	2150.0.3	Operations
	2150.0.4	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2160.0		Recognition and Control of Exposure to Risk
	2160.0.1	Risk Evaluation
	2160.0.2	Risk Control
	2160.0.3	Inspection Objectives
	2160.0.4	Inspection Procedures
2170.0		Purchase and Sale of Loans Guaranteed by the U.S. Government
	2170.0.1	Introduction
	2170.0.2	Recommendations for Originating and Selling Institutions
	2170.0.3	Recommendations for Purchasing Institutions
2175.0		Sale of Uninsured Annuities
	2175.0.1	Introduction
	2175.0.2	Permissibility of Uninsured Annuity Sales
	2175.0.3	Characteristics of Annuity Instruments
	2175.0.4	Improper Marketing Practices
	2175.0.5	Inspection Objectives
	2175.0.6	Inspection Procedures
2178.0		Support of Bank-Affiliated Investment Funds
	2178.0.1	Policy on Banks Providing Financial Support to Advised Funds
	2178.0.2	Notification and Consultation with the Primary Federal Regulator

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2178.0.3	Inspection Objectives
	2178.0.4	Inspection Procedures
2180.0		Securities Activities in Overseas Markets
2187.0		Violations of Federal Reserve Margin Regulations Resulting from “Free-Riding” Schemes
	2187.0.1	Typical Day Trading or Free-Riding Activities
	2187.0.2	Securities Credit Regulations
	2187.0.2.1	Regulation U, Credit by Banks or Persons Other Than Brokers or Dealers for the Purpose of Purchasing or Carrying Margins Stocks
	2187.0.2.2	Regulation T, Credit by Brokers and Dealers, and Regulation X, Borrowers of Securities Credit
	2187.0.3	New-Customer Inquiries and Warning Signals
	2187.0.4	Scope of the Inspection for Free-Riding Activities
	2187.0.5	SEC and Federal Reserve Sanctions and Enforcement Actions
	2187.0.6	Inspection Objectives
	2187.0.7	Inspection Procedures
	2187.0.8	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2220.3		Note Issuance and Revolving Underwriting Credit Facilities
	2220.3.1	Note Issuance Facility (NIF)
	2220.3.2	Revolving Underwriting Facility (RUF)
	2220.3.3	Risk
	2220.3.4	Pricing and Fees
	2220.3.5	Standby RUFs
	2220.3.6	RUF Documents
2231.0		Real Estate Appraisals and Evaluations
	2231.0.1	Interagency Appraisal and Evaluation Guidelines
	2231.0.2	Supervisory Policy
	2231.0.3	Appraisal and Evaluation Program
	2231.0.4	Independence of the Appraisal and Evaluation Program
	2231.0.5	Selection of Appraisers or Persons Who Perform Evaluations
	2231.0.5.1	Approved Appraiser List
	2231.0.5.2	Engagement Letters
	2231.0.6	Transactions that Require Appraisals
	2231.0.7	Minimum Appraisal Standards
	2231.0.8	Appraisal Development
	2231.0.9	Appraisal Reports
	2231.0.10	Transactions that Require Evaluations
	2231.0.11	Evaluation Development
	2231.0.12	Evaluation Content
	2231.0.13	Validity of Appraisals and Evaluations
	2231.0.14	Reviewing Appraisals and Evaluations

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2231.0.14.1	Reviewer Qualifications
	2231.0.14.2	Depth of Review
	2231.0.14.3	Resolution of Deficiencies
	2231.0.14.4	Documentation of the Review
	2231.0.15	Third-Party Arrangements
	2231.0.16	Program Compliance
	2231.0.16.1	Monitoring Collateral Values
	2231.0.16.2	Portfolio Collateral Risk
	2231.0.16.3	Modifications and Workouts of Existing Credits
	2231.0.17	Referrals
	2231.0.18	Appendixes in Interagency Appraisal And Evaluation Guidelines
	2231.0.19	Background Information On Appraisal Valuation Approaches
	2231.0.19.1	Cost Approach
	2231.0.19.2	Sales Comparison Approach
	2231.0.19.3	Income Approach
	2231.0.19.4	Value Correlation
	2231.0.19.5	Other Definitions of Value
	2231.0.20	Supervisory Expectations and Findings
	2231.0.21	Inspection Objectives
	2231.0.22	Inspection Procedures
	2231.0.23	Internal Control Questionnaire
	2231.0.23.1	Policies
	2231.0.23.2	Appraisals
	2231.0.23.3	Appraisers
	2231.0.23.4	Evaluations
	2231.0.23.5	Evaluators
	2231.0.23.6	Monitoring Collateral Values
	2231.0.23.7	Third Party Arrangements
	2231.0.23.8	Analytical Methods and Technological Tools
	2231.0.24	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, Board Orders
2240.0		Guidelines for the Review and Classification of Troubled Real Estate Loans
	2240.0.1	Examiner Review of Commercial Real Estate Loans
	2240.0.1.1	Loan Policy and Administration Review
	2240.0.1.2	Indicators of Troubled Real Estate Markets and Projects, and Related Indebtedness
	2240.0.1.3	Examiner Review of Individual Loans, Including Analysis of Collateral Value
	2240.0.2	Classification Guidelines
	2240.0.2.1	Classification of Troubled Project-Dependent Commercial Real Estate Loans
	2240.0.2.2	Guidelines for Classifying Partially Charged-Off Loans
	2240.0.2.3	Guidelines for Classifying Formally Restructured Loans
	2240.0.3	Treatment of Guarantees in the Classification Process
	2240.0.3.1	Considerations Relating to a Guarantor's Financial Capacity
	2240.0.3.2	Considerations Relating to a Guarantor's Willingness to Repay

<i>Sections</i>	<i>Subsections</i>	<i>Title</i>
	2240.0.3.3	Other Considerations as to the Treatment of Guarantees in the Classification Process
2241.0		Retail-Credit Classification
	2241.0.1	Uniform Retail-Credit Classification and Account-Management Policy
	2241.0.1.1	Other Considerations for Classification
	2241.0.1.2	Partial Payments on Open-End and Closed-End Credit
	2241.0.1.3	Re-aging, Extensions, Deferrals, Renewals, or Rewrites
	2241.0.1.4	Depository Institution Examination Considerations
2250.0		Domestic and Other Reports to Be Submitted to the Federal Reserve
	2250.0.1	Penalties for Errors in Reports
	2250.0.2	Approval of Directors and Senior Officers of Depository Institutions
	2250.0.3	Inspection Objectives
	2250.0.4	Inspection Procedures
	2250.0.5	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
2260.0		Venture Capital
	2260.0.1	Introduction
	2260.0.2	Loans and Investments
	2260.0.3	Funding
	2260.0.4	Profitability
	2260.0.5	Capitalization
	2260.0.6	Inspection Objectives
	2260.0.7	Inspection Procedures
	2260.0.7.1	Pre-Inspection
	2260.0.7.2	On-Site Inspection
	2260.0.7.3	Matters Warranting Recommendation in Inspection Report
	2260.0.8	Laws, Regulations, Interpretations, and Orders
	2260.0.9	Appendix 1—Venture Capital Company Sample Balance Sheet
	2260.0.10	Appendix 2—Venture Capital Company Sample Income Statement
2500.0		Supervision of Savings and Loan Holding Companies
	2500.0.1	Applicable Law, Regulations, and Guidance

Discussed within these subsections are topics associated with regard to the overall bank holding company organization. Included is general information, inspection objectives and procedures, and in some instances references to laws, interpretations, and Board orders. The primary topics addressed are the supervision of subsidiaries, grandfather rights, commitments, extensions of credit to BHC officials, man-

agement information systems, taxes, funding, control and ownership, reporting by foreign and domestic banking organizations, formal corrective actions, sharing of criminal referral information, investment transactions, recognition and control of risk, purchase and sale of U.S. Government guaranteed loans, and venture capital.

WHAT'S NEW IN THIS REVISED SECTION

This section is revised to include a revision of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (FDIA) that requires a BHC or SLHC to serve as a "source of strength" to its depository institution subsidiaries. See section 38A of the FDIA and section 616(d) of the Dodd-Frank Act.

The relative merit of the degree of supervision is dependent upon a number of factors, and must be analyzed in light of efficiency and operating performance. The degree and nature of control over subsidiary organizations in a holding company system usually falls between two extremes: a tightly controlled, centralized network similar to a branch system, or a loosely controlled, decentralized system with each subsidiary operating autonomously. A bank holding company might originate as a "shell" corporation organized by investors interested in purchasing a bank, or by a bank interested in reorganizing into a holding company structure in order to expand through acquisition of nonbank concerns or other banks. The management and directorate of such a holding company are often the same as that of the bank. As the holding company expands through acquisitions, the parent may continue to exercise control through the staff of the lead bank, or may form a separate staff to overview the operations of all subsidiaries. The relative merit of the degree of supervision is dependent upon a number of factors, and must be analyzed in light of efficiency and operating performance.

The level at which policies are established and supervised, the frequency of contact between the parent and subsidiaries, and the extent to which officers and directors of the parent serve also as officers and directors of the subsidiary organizations are indicative of the level of control exercised by the parent. A centralized bank holding company is characterized by the placement of directors and officers of the parent company (or those of the lead bank) in each of its subsidiaries, with frequent group meetings held between the officers of the lead bank or holding company and those of the subsidiary organizations. While this is an efficient method of operation, this type of organization builds in the potential for conflicts of interest for those individuals who serve in dual capacities. Corporate policies should recognize this potential and provide guidance for resolution. The overriding principle should be that *no* member

of the bank holding company organization should be disadvantaged by a transaction with another affiliate. Management of the investment portfolio, budgets, tax planning, personnel, correspondent relationships, loans and loan participations, and liability management are usually controlled by the parent or lead bank in a centralized system.

A decentralized system is one in which the banks act independently of the parent company, with infrequent contacts with affiliates, placement of parent or lead bank directors and officers in less than a majority of the banks within the system and infrequent reporting by subsidiaries concerning investments and operating performance. The bank holding company might act only in a minor advisory capacity. In such a decentralized system each subsidiary operates as a relatively autonomous unit, with authority and responsibility for certain actions delegated by the parent to the board and/or chief executive officer of each subsidiary.

It is the responsibility of the directors and management of the parent company to establish and supervise the policies of subsidiaries, either directly or through delegation of authority. The importance of written policies in a delegated, decentralized organization cannot be overemphasized, and the selection of qualified officers to carry out policies is equally important. If written policies have not been developed by the holding company, the examiner should recommend that major policies be written and communicated to subsidiaries. Policies should ensure that subsidiaries are not managed for cross purposes and should avoid concentrations of risks on a consolidated basis.

2010.0.1 POLICY STATEMENT ON THE RESPONSIBILITY OF BANK HOLDING COMPANIES TO ACT AS SOURCES OF STRENGTH TO THEIR SUBSIDIARY BANKS

The Board is concerned about situations where a bank has been threatened with failure notwithstanding the availability of resources to its parent bank holding company. In order to assure that the Board's policy that bank holding companies serve as sources of financial strength to subsidiary banks is understood by bank holding companies, the Board has issued a

general policy statement reaffirming and articulating these principles, and confirming that the policy applies to failing bank situations. This long-standing policy has been recognized by the Supreme Court in its decision in *Board of Governors v. First Lincolnwood Corp.*, 439 U.S. 234 (1978), and has been incorporated explicitly in the Board's Regulation Y, 12 C.F.R. 225.4(a)(1).

A fundamental and long-standing principle underlying the Federal Reserve's supervision and regulation of bank holding companies is that bank holding companies should serve as sources of financial and managerial strength to their subsidiary banks. The Federal Deposit Insurance Act (FDIA) requires that a bank holding company or savings and loan holding company act as a source of strength to its depository institution(s). The term "source of strength" means the ability of a company that directly or indirectly owns or controls an insured depository institution to provide financial assistance to such insured depository institution in the event of financial stress to the insured depository institution. (See the FDIA, section 38A(a)–(c).) It is the policy of the Board that in serving as a source of strength to its subsidiary banks, a bank holding company should stand ready to use available resources to provide adequate capital funds to its subsidiary banks during periods of financial stress or adversity and should maintain the financial flexibility and capital-raising capacity to obtain additional resources for assisting its subsidiary banks in a manner consistent with the provisions of this policy statement.

Since the enactment of the Bank Holding Company Act in 1956, the Board has formally stated on numerous occasions that a bank holding company should act as a source of financial and managerial strength to its subsidiary banks. As the Supreme Court recognized, in the 1978 *First Lincolnwood* decision, Congress has expressly endorsed the Board's long-standing view that holding companies must serve as a "source of strength to subsidiary financial institutions."¹ In addition to frequent pronouncements over the years and the 1978 Supreme Court decision, this principle has been incorporated explicitly in Regulation Y since 1983. In particular, Section 225.4(a)(1) of Regulation Y provides that:

"A bank holding company shall serve as a source of financial and managerial strength to its subsidiary banks and shall not conduct its operations in an unsafe or unsound manner."

The important public policy interest in the support provided by a bank holding company to its subsidiary banks is based upon the fact that in acquiring a commercial bank, a bank holding company derives certain benefits at the corporate level that result, in part, from the ownership of an institution that can issue federally-insured deposits and has access to Federal Reserve credit. The existence of the federal "safety net" reflects important governmental concerns regarding the critical fiduciary responsibilities of depository institutions as custodians of depositors' funds and their strategic role within our economy as operators of the payments system and impartial providers of credit. Thus, in seeking the advantages flowing from the ownership of a commercial bank, bank holding companies have an obligation to serve as a source of strength and support to their subsidiary banks.

An important determinant of a bank's financial strength is the adequacy of its capital base. Capital provides a buffer for individual banking organizations to absorb losses in times of financial strain, promotes the safety of depositors' funds, helps to maintain confidence in the banking system, and supports the reasonable expansion of banking organizations as an essential element of a strong and growing economy. A strong capital cushion also limits the exposure of the federal deposit insurance fund to losses experienced by banking institutions. For these reasons, the Board has long considered adequate capital to be critical to the soundness of individual banking organizations and to the safety and stability of the banking and financial system.

Accordingly, it is the Board's policy that a bank holding company should not withhold financial support from a subsidiary bank in a weakened or failing condition when the holding company is in a position to provide the support. A bank holding company's failure to assist a troubled or failing subsidiary bank under these circumstances would generally be viewed as an unsafe and unsound banking practice or a violation of Regulation Y or both.

Where necessary, the Board is prepared to take supervisory action to require such assistance. Finally, the Board recognizes that there may be unusual and limited circumstances where flexible application of the principles set forth in this policy statement might be neces-

1. *Board of Governors v. First Lincolnwood Corp.*, 439 U.S. 234, 252 (1978), citing S. Rep. No. 95–323, 95th Cong., 1st Sess. 11 (1977).

sary, and the Board may from time to time identify situations that may justify exceptions to the policy.

This statement is not meant to establish new principles of supervision and regulation; rather, as already noted, it builds on public policy considerations as reflected in banking laws and regulations and long-standing Federal Reserve supervisory policies and practices. A bank holding company's failure to meet its obligation to serve as a source of strength to its subsidiary bank(s), including an unwillingness to provide appropriate assistance to a troubled or failing bank, will generally be considered an unsafe and unsound banking practice or a violation of Regulation Y, or both, particularly if appropriate resources are on hand or are available to the bank holding company on a reasonable basis. Consequently, such a failure will generally result in the issuance of a cease and desist order or other enforcement action as authorized under banking law and as deemed appropriate under the circumstances.

2010.0.2 BOARD ORDER REQUESTING A WAIVER FROM THE BOARD'S SOURCE OF STRENGTH POLICY

On December 23, 1991, the Board approved an application of a BHC to eventually acquire 100 percent of the outstanding stock of another BHC under a 5 year option. Initially, the BHC would acquire approximately 26 percent of the acquiree's total capital by purchasing a 15-year subordinated capital note agreement. It would then have the option to acquire all of the remaining stock within 5 years. The acquiring BHC requested that the Board waive any requirement of the Board that it serve as a source of financial strength to the subsidiary bank (the Board's "Source of Strength" policy) of the BHC acquired until such time that the option is exercised to acquire the actual ownership of all the shares. The Board considered the request and determined that it would not be appropriate to waive the responsibility to serve as a source of financial strength to the bank in this case. The Board noted that the option agreement and the capital note agreement together provide a mechanism for the acquiring BHC to exert control over the future ownership of the acquired BHC and many of the most important management decisions. Refer to 1992 FRB 159 and the F.R.R.S. at 4-271.3.

2010.0.3 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. To determine whether the board of directors of the parent company is cognizant of and performing its duties and responsibilities.
2. To determine the adequacy of written policies and compliance with such policies by the parent and its subsidiaries.
3. To determine whether the board is properly informed as to the financial conditions, trends and policies of its subsidiaries.
4. To determine the level of supervision over subsidiaries and whether the supervision as structured has a beneficial or detrimental effect upon the subsidiaries.

2010.0.4 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Determine if the holding company maintains its own staff, or whether the holding company management and directorate are the same as those of a subsidiary.
2. Determine whether the board of directors of the parent company reviews the audit reports, regulatory examination reports, and board minutes of its subsidiaries.
3. Determine the extent to which subsidiaries rely upon the parent for investment and lending guidance.
4. Determine which specific functions and decisions are performed only at the parent company level.
5. Determine the extent to which representatives of the parent company serve as officers and/or directors of subsidiaries.
6. Review minutes of the board and executive committees of the parent to determine whether the parent company reviews loan delinquency reports, comparative balance sheets and comparative income statements of the subsidiaries.
7. Review the extent of influence and control over both bank and nonbank subsidiaries.
8. Determine the degree of influence by the parent company over:
 - a. Appointment of officers;
 - b. Salary administration;
 - c. Budget and tax planning;
 - d. Capital expenditures;
 - e. Dividend policy;
 - f. Investment portfolio management;
 - g. Loan portfolio management;
 - h. Asset/liability and interest rate/risk management.

9. Determine the degree to which management of the subsidiary companies interfaces with management of the parent company to discuss policies.

The responsibility for the performance of the organization rests with the board of directors of the parent company. Parent company management should have policies in place to prevent funding practices that put at risk the welfare of the subsidiary banks or the consolidated organization.

The parent's supervision and control of subsidiary funding activities and the funding between itself and its subsidiaries should be thus evaluated. The parent should be expected to maintain policies for itself and its subsidiaries that provide guidance and controls for funding practices. The presence and wording of funding policies and the degree to which the policies are followed by the subsidiaries, and the effectiveness of the policies in reducing risk to the entire organization should also be assessed.

The importance of the parent's involvement in funding decisions and the need for monitoring and control at the parent level needs to be emphasized. As a minimum, the parent's funding policies should address the following areas:

1. *Capitalization*—The holding company's policy on capital levels should address capital for the bank subsidiaries, the nonbank subsidiaries, and the consolidated organization. The policy for bank and consolidated capital should be consistent with the Board's Capital Adequacy Guidelines and should address the asset quality of the entity in question. The policy for nonbank capital should include maintaining the capital level at industry standards and should also address the asset quality of the subsidiary, the holding company's capital for each entity should address what measures would be taken in the event capital falls below a targeted level.

Capital should also be addressed at the parent company level by specifying the degree of *double leverage* that the parent is willing to accept. The parent's capital policy should provide some measure of assessing each individual subsidiary's capital adequacy in the context of the double leverage within the organization.

The capital policies should include the method for calculating dividends from each entity. The amount of dividends from subsidiaries to the parent is affected by the parent's philosophy on the distribution of capital throughout the organization. Some companies tend to keep minimum capital levels in their subsidiary banks by transferring the excess capital to the parent in the form of dividends. The parent then invests these funds for its own benefit, and downstreams the funds as needed. Other companies

calculate dividends based strictly on the parent's cash needs and thus keep any excess capital at the bank level.

2. *Asset/Liability Management*—The holding company's policies in the area of *asset/liability management* should include *interest rate sensitivity matching, maturity matching, and the use of interest rate futures and forwards*. These topics should be addressed for each entity as well as the organization as a whole. It is the parent's responsibility to see that each entity is operating consistently with the corporate goals.

The *interest rate sensitivity policies* should be designed to reduce the organization's vulnerability to interest rate movements. Policies concerning the asset/liability rate sensitivity match should not be limited to the subsidiary lead bank. The rate charged on parent company debt and the rate received by the parent on its advances to subsidiaries should also be addressed to monitor the parent's ability to service its debt in the face of changing interest rates. The policy should specify what degree of mismatching is considered acceptable. The interest rate sensitivity matching of the organization should be monitored on a frequent basis through the timely preparation of a matching schedule.

Maturity matching policies should be designed to provide adequate liquidity to the organization. These policies should not be limited to the subsidiary lead bank, since a parent company serving as a funding vehicle for nonbank subsidiaries can have substantial exposure through its advances to these subsidiaries. The holding company's policies should include some measure of the liquidity of the assets in the nonbank subsidiary (determined partially by the quality of these assets), for comparison against the parent's source of funding. The policies should quantify the maximum degree of exposure in the organization that is considered acceptable to management. The reporting in this area should clearly indicate the current exposure and thus the potential for liquidity problems.

The holding company's *policies addressing interest rate futures and forwards* should be consistent with the Board's policy in this area. Involvement in this activity should be geared towards hedging against interest rate movements rather than speculating that interest rates will either increase or decrease. The policy

should specify what use of futures and forwards is considered appropriate.

3. *Funding of Nonbank Subsidiaries*—The parent company should have policies addressing how nonbank subsidiaries fund their activities. If the subsidiaries obtain their own funding, market discipline may be a factor in controlling the activities of the subsidiaries. However, the parent cannot rely solely on market discipline due to the risks from interdependence. The parent company is still responsible under the centralized accountability approach to approve and supervise the subsidiaries' funding policies.

If the subsidiaries obtain funds from the parent, the risk from interdependence is increased. The subsidiary is less able to stand alone since it is reliant on the parent for funding. If the parent capitalizes the nonbank subsidiary through borrowed funds, bank capital is put at risk due to the increased exposure of the organization. If the borrowing results in **double-leverage**, the risk is increased since less "hard" capital is available for support. The parent's policy on advances to nonbank subsidiaries should address this additional risk by specifying the level of borrowings that is considered acceptable relative to nonbank capital and consolidated capital. The terms of the borrowings should also be specified, and should be consis-

tent with the company's asset/liability management policies. The policy should include contingency measures to be used in the event of liquidity problems.

2010.1.1 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. To determine if the parent's funding policies adequately address funding risks to the organization.
2. To determine if the implementation of the parent's policies is effective in controlling funding risks to the organization.
3. To determine if the parent is adequately informed of actual funding practices and decisions.

2010.1.2 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Review the funding policies at the parent and the subsidiary levels.
2. Determine how effectively the policies are implemented throughout the organization.
3. Discuss with management the funding practices of each subsidiary and any interorganizational funding.

aggregate limit on such loans. The policy should set forth credit standards for any loan purchased as well as require that complete documentation be maintained by the purchasing entities. The policy should define the extent of contingent liability,

holdback and reserve requirements, and the manner in which the loan will be handled and serviced.

10. *Loans to insiders.* Lending policies should address loans to insiders. Such policies should incorporate applicable regulatory

Supervision of Subsidiaries (Loan Administration and Lending Standards) Section 2010.2

WHAT'S NEW IN THIS REVISED SECTION

Effective January 2016, section 2010.2.5 is revised to reference SR-15-17, "Interagency Statement on Prudent Risk Management for Commercial Real Estate Lending" and its attachment. Refer to the Board's December 18, 2015, press release.

2010.2.05 LOAN ADMINISTRATION

The examiner should make a qualitative assessment of the parent's supervision and control of subsidiary lending activities. The System's ability to evaluate the effectiveness of a company's supervision and control of subsidiary lending activities can be strengthened not only by evaluating the parent's role in light of efficiency and operating performance, but also by evaluating the *quality* of control and supervision.

In order to assess quality, there must be a standard measure against which a company's policies can be evaluated. Establishing the minimum areas that a company's loan-administration policies should address will create a standard that will aid in evaluating the quality of the company's control and its supervision of that activity.

Current inspection procedures include the testing of subsidiaries' compliance with a parent company's policies. This section summarizes the parent's responsibilities with regard to supervising subsidiary lending. It defines the internal and external factors that should be considered in the formulation of loan policies and a strategic plan. It also outlines the minimum elements that the lending policies should include.

Internal and external factors that a banking organization should consider when formulating its loan policies and strategic plan are—

1. the size and financial condition of the credit-extending subsidiaries,
2. the expertise and size of the lending staff,
3. the need to avoid undue concentrations of risk,
4. compliance with all respective laws and regulations, and
5. market conditions.

Following are the components that generally form the basis for a sound loan policy:

1. *Geographic limits.* The trade area should be clearly defined and loan officers should be fully aware of specific geographic limitations for lending purposes. Such a policy avoids approval of loans to customers outside the trade area in opposition to primary objectives. The primary trade area should be distinguished from any secondary trade area so that emphasis for each trade area may be properly placed.
2. *Distribution of loans by category.* Limitations based on aggregate percentages of total loans in commercial, real estate, consumer, and other categories are common. Such policies are beneficial; however, they should contain provisions for deviations that are approved by the directorate or a committee. This allows credit to be distributed in relation to the market conditions of the trade area. During times of heavy loan demand in one category, an inflexible loan-distribution policy would cause that category to be slighted in favor of another. Deviations from loan distributions by category may be beneficial but are appropriate only until the risk of further increasing the loan concentration outweighs the benefits to be derived from expanding the portfolio to satisfy credit demand. See component 11, "Concentrations of credit," below.
3. *Types of loans.* The lending policy should state the types of loans that will be made and the maximum amount for each type of loan. The policy should also set forth guidelines to follow in making specific loans. Decisions about the types of loans to be granted should be based on the expertise of the lending officers, the deposit structure, and anticipated creditworthy demands of the trade area. Sophisticated credits or loans secured by collateral that require more than normal supervision should be avoided unless or until there are the necessary personnel to properly administer them. Information systems and internal controls should be in place to identify, monitor, and control the types of credit that have resulted in abnormal loss. The amount of real estate and other types of term loans should be considered in rela-

tion to the amount of stable funds.

4. *Maximum maturities.* The loan policy should call for underwriting standards that ensure realistic repayment plans. Loan maturities should be set by taking into consideration the anticipated source of repayment, the purpose of the loan, the type of property, and the useful life of the collateral. For term loans, the lending policy should state the maximum time within which loans may be amortized. Specific procedures should be developed for situations requiring balloon payments and/or modification of the original terms of the loan. If a clean-up period¹
5. *Loan pricing.* Rates on various loan types must be sufficient to cover the cost of funds loaned and the servicing of the loan, including overhead and possible losses, while providing an acceptable margin of profit over the long run. These costs must be known and taken into consideration before rates are established. Periodic reviews should be conducted to determine whether adjustments are necessary to reflect changes in costs or competitive factors. Specific guidelines for other factors, such as compensating balances and commitment fees, are also germane to loan pricing.
6. *Loan amount to appraised value.* The policy should outline where the responsibility for appraisals rests and should define formal, standard appraisal procedures, including procedures for possible reappraisals in case of renewal or extension. Acceptable types of appraisals and limits on the dollar amount and the type of property that personnel are authorized to appraise should be outlined. Circumstances requiring appraisals by qualified independent appraisers should be described. The maximum ratio of the loan amount to appraised value,² the method of valuation, and differences for various types of property should be detailed. The policy should contain a schedule listing the downpayment requirements for financing consumer goods and business equipment.
7. *Loan amount to market value of pledged securities.* In addition to the legal restric-

tions imposed by Federal Reserve Regulation U, the lending policy should set forth margin requirements for all types of securities acceptable as collateral. Margin requirements should be related to the marketability of the security (for example, closely held, over-the-counter, actively traded). The policy should assign responsibility and set a frequency for the periodic pricing of the collateral.

8. *Financial information.* Extension of credit on a safe and sound basis depends on complete and accurate information regarding the borrower's credit standing. One possible exception is when the loan is predicated on readily marketable collateral, the disposition of which was originally designated as the source of repayment for the advance. Current and complete financial information is necessary, including secondary sources of repayment, not only at the inception of the loan, but also throughout the term of the advance. The lending policy should define the financial-statement requirements for businesses and individuals at various borrowing levels and should include requirements for audited, nonaudited, fiscal, interim, operating, cash-flow, and other statements.³ It should include external credit checks required at various intervals. The requirements for financial information should be defined in such a way that any credit-data exception would be a clear violation of the lending policy.
9. *Limits and guidelines for loan participations.* Section 2020.2 provides significant information regarding intercompany loan participations between holding company affiliates. The lending policy should place limits on the amount of loans purchased from any one source and also place an

3. On March 30, 1993, federal bank regulators set forth an expanded interagency policy to encourage small-business lending. Under the policy, banks and thrifts that are well or adequately capitalized and that are rated CAMELS 1 or 2 may make small-business and agricultural loans, the aggregate value of which cannot exceed 20 percent of their total capital. To qualify for the exemption, each loan may not exceed the lesser of \$900,000 or 3 percent of the institution's total capital. Further, the loans selected for this exemption by the institution may not be delinquent as of the selection date and may not be made to an insider. The loans must be separately listed or have an accounting segregation from other loans in the portfolio. They "will be evaluated solely on the basis of performance and will be exempt from examiner criticism of documentation." The institution's records must include an evaluation of its ability to collect the loan in determining the adequacy of its allowance for loan and lease losses. If a loan becomes more than 60 days past due, it may be reviewed and classified by an examiner based on its credit quality, not the level of loan documentation.

1. A "clean-up period" is when a borrower is asked to repay the entire balance of a credit line and to refrain from further borrowing for a specified period of time.

2. This is often referred to as the loan-to-value ratio.

limitations (for example, Federal Reserve Regulation O) and should also address situations in which it would be prudent to exercise certain restrictions even though not explicitly required to do so by regulation (for example, loans by nonbank subsidiaries to insiders).

11. *Concentrations of credit.* Credit concentrations may be defined as loans collateralized by a common security; loans to one borrower or related group of borrowers; loans dependent upon a particular agricultural commodity; aggregate loans to major employers, their employees, and their major suppliers; loans within industry groups; out-of-territory loans; aggregate amount of paper purchased from any one source; or those loans that often have been included in other homogeneous risk groupings. Credit concentrations, by their nature, are dependent on common key factors, and when weaknesses develop, they have an adverse impact on each individual loan making up the concentration.

In identifying asset concentrations, commercial real estate loans and residential real estate loans can be viewed separately when their performance is not subject to similar economic or financial risks. In the same vein, commercial real estate development loans need not necessarily be grouped with residential real estate development loans, especially when the residential developer has firm, reliable purchase contracts for the sale of the homes upon completion. Even within the commercial development and construction sector, distinctions for concentration purposes may be made, when appropriate, between those loans that have firm take-out commitments and those that do not. Groups or classes of real estate loans should, of course, be combined and viewed as concentrations when they do share significant common characteristics and are similarly affected by adverse economic, financial, or business developments.

Banking organizations should establish and adhere to policies that control "concentration risk." The lending policy should address the risk involved in various concentrations and indicate those that should be avoided or limited. However, before concentrations can be limited or reviewed, accounting systems must be in place to allow for the retrieval of information necessary to determine and monitor concentrations. The lending policy should provide for

frequent monitoring and reporting of all concentrations.

Banking organizations with asset concentrations are expected to put in place effective internal policies, systems, and controls to monitor and manage this risk. Concentrations that involve excessive or undue risks require close scrutiny and should be reduced over a reasonable period of time. When there is a need to reduce asset concentrations, banking organizations are normally expected to develop a plan that is realistic, prudent, and achievable in view of the particular circumstances and market conditions. In situations where concentration levels have built up over an extended period, it may take time—in some cases several years—to achieve a more balanced and diversified portfolio. What is critical is that adequate systems and controls are in place for reducing undue or excessive concentrations in accordance with a prudent plan, along with strong credit policies and loan-administration standards to control the risks associated with new loans, and adequate capital to protect the institution while its portfolio is being restructured.

Institutions that have in place effective internal controls to manage and reduce concentrations over a reasonable period of time *need not* automatically refuse credit to sound borrowers simply because of the borrower's industry or geographic location. This principle applies to prudent loan renewals and rollovers, as well as to new extensions of credit that are underwritten in a sound manner.

The purpose of a lending organization's policies should be to improve the overall quality of its portfolio. The replacement of unsound loans with sound loans can enhance the quality of a portfolio, even when concentration levels are not reduced.

12. *Refinancing or renewal of loans.* Refinancings or renewals should be structured in a manner that is consistent with sound banking, supervisory, and accounting practices, and in a manner that protects the banking organization and improves its prospects for collecting or recovering on the asset.
13. *Loan origination and loan approvals.* The policy should establish loan-origination and loan-approval procedures, both generally and by size and type of loan. The loan limitations for all lending officers should be

set accordingly. Lending limits should also be set for group authority, allowing a combination of officers or a committee to approve larger loans. Reporting procedures and the frequency of committee meetings should also be defined. The loan policy should further establish identification, review, and approval procedures for exception loans, including real estate and other loans with loan-to-value percentages in excess of supervisory limits.⁴

14. *Loan-administration procedures for loans secured by real estate.* The loan policy should establish loan-administration procedures covering documentation, disbursement, collateral administration and inspection, escrow administration, collection, loan payoffs, and loan review. Documentation procedures would specify, among other things, the types and frequency of financial statements and the requirements for verifying information provided by the borrower. They would also cover the type and frequency of collateral evaluations (appraisals and other estimates of value). In addition, loan-administration policies should address procedures for servicing and participation agreements and other loan-administration procedures such as those for claims processing (for example, seeking recovery on defaulted loans that are partially or fully guaranteed by a government entity or insurance program).
15. *Collection and foreclosure and the reporting and disclosure of delinquent obligations and charge-offs.* The lending policy should define delinquent obligations, provide guidelines on when loans are to be placed on nonaccrual or to be restructured, dictate appropriate procedures for reporting to senior management and to the directorate past-due credits, and provide appropriate guidance on the extent of disclosure of such credits. The policy should establish and require a follow-up collection procedure that is systematic and progressively stronger and should set forth guidelines (where applicable) for close surveillance by a loan work-out division. It should also address extensions and other forms of forbearance,

the acceptance of deeds in lieu of foreclosure, and the timing of foreclosure. The policy must be consistent with supervisory instructions in the financial statements of condition and income for financial institutions and BHCs (bank call report and the FR Y-9C and the other FR Y-series reports). Guidelines should be established to ensure that all accounts are presented to and reviewed by management for charge-off after a stated period of delinquency. See section 2065.1 for disclosure, accounting, and reporting issues related to nonaccrual loans and restructured debt.

16. *Reserve for loan losses and provisions for loan losses.* The policy should set forth the parameters that management considers in determining an appropriate level of loan-loss reserves as well as provisions necessary to attain this level.

Because an analysis of the allowance for loan and lease losses (ALLL) requires an assessment of the relative credit risks in the portfolio, many banking organizations, for analytical purposes, attribute portions of the ALLL to loans and other assets classified “substandard” by management or a supervisory agency. Management may do this because it believes, based on past history or other factors, that there may be unidentified losses associated with loans classified substandard in the aggregate.

Furthermore, management may use this as an analytical approach in estimating the total amount necessary for the ALLL and in comparing the ALLL to various categories of loans over time. As a general rule, an individual loan classified substandard may remain in an accrual status as long as the regulatory reporting requirements for accrual treatment are met, even when an attribution of the ALLL has been made.

17. *Other.* The policy should address the handling of exceptions to the policy as well as provide for adherence to the policy via internal audits, centralized loan review, and/or “director’s examinations.” The policy should be reviewed annually to determine if it continues to be compatible with the BHC’s objectives as well as market conditions.

4. For subsidiaries that are insured depository institutions, real estate loans that are in excess of supervisory loan-to-value limits are to be identified in the subsidiaries’ records. The aggregate amount of these loans is to be reported quarterly to the depository institution’s board of directors.

2010.2.1 UNIFORM REAL ESTATE LENDING STANDARDS

On December 23, 1992, the Board announced adoption of a uniform rule and guidelines on

real estate lending, along with the FDIC, OCC, and OTS, as mandated by section 304 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991 (FDICIA). The Board's Regulation H (12 C.F.R. 208, Membership of State Banking Institutions in the Federal Reserve System) was amended to implement the uniform real estate lending standards for state member banks. Although the Board did not directly apply the regulation to bank holding companies and their nonbank subsidiaries, those entities are expected to conduct and to supervise real estate lending activities prudently, consistent with safe and sound lending standards.

The agencies' regulations require that each insured depository institution adopt and maintain comprehensive written real estate lending policies appropriate to the institution and the nature and scope of its lending activities. Lending policies must be reviewed and approved by the institution's board of directors at least annually. The policies are to include standards for loan diversification and prudent underwriting as well as loan-administration procedures and documentation, approval, and reporting requirements. Depository institutions' policies are to reflect consideration of the appendix to the banking agencies' regulations, "Interagency Guidelines for Real Estate Lending Policies." The guidelines are designed to help an institution formulate and maintain real estate lending policy that is appropriate to its size and the nature and scope of its operations, as required by the regulations. These guidelines are generally comparable to the inspection guidance provided in this section.

2010.2.2 LENDING STANDARDS FOR COMMERCIAL LOANS

The lending decision is properly that of the senior management and boards of directors of banking institutions, and not of their supervisory agencies. However, in fulfilling their roles, directors and senior managers have the obligation to monitor lending practices and to ensure that their policies are enforced and that lending practices generally remain within the overall ability of the institution to manage. The following subsections describe certain sound practices regarding lending standards and credit-approval processes for commercial loans.⁵

5. This guidance is derived, in part, from the June 1998 Federal Reserve supervisory staff report, "The Significance of Recent Changes in Bank Lending Standards: Evidence from the Loan Quality Assessment Project."

Sound lending practices address formal credit policies, formal credit-staff approval of transactions, loan-approval documentation, the use of forward-looking tools in the approval process, and management and lender information systems. In addition to evaluating adherence to these sound practices during inspections, supervisory personnel and examiners may wish to discuss these standards with loan portfolio managers at institutions where a full credit review is being performed. Senior management should be made aware of the potential for deterioration in the loan portfolio if lending discipline is not maintained, whether from inadequate assessment or communication of lending risks, incomplete adherence to prudent lending standards that reflect the risk appetite of the board of directors, or both.

Examiners should evaluate whether adequate internal oversight exists and whether institution management has timely and accurate information. As always, examiners should also discuss matters of concern with the institution and include them in their reports of inspection, even if cited practices and problem loans have not yet reached harmful or criticized levels. Such cautionary remarks help to alert institution management to potential or emerging sources of concern and may help to deter future problems. Any practices that extend beyond prudent bounds should be promptly corrected. See SR-98-18.

2010.2.2.1 Sound Practices in Loan Standards and Approval

Certain sound practices in lending can help to maintain strong credit discipline and ensure that an institution's decision to take risk in lending is well informed, balanced, and prudent. Several of these sound practices are listed and described below.

2010.2.2.1.1 Formal Credit Policies

The Federal Reserve and other supervisory authorities have long stressed the importance of formal written credit policies in a sound credit-risk-management process. Such policies can provide crucial discipline to an institution's lending process, especially when the institution's standards are under assault due to intense competition for loans. They can serve to communicate formally an institution's appetite for

credit risk in a manner that will support sound lending decisions, while focusing appropriate attention on loans being considered that diverge from approved standards.

In developing and refining loan policies, some institutions specify “guidance minimums” for financial performance ratios that apply to certain types of loans or borrowers (for example, commercial real estate). Such guidance makes explicit that loans not meeting certain financial tests (based on current performance, projected future performance, or both) should in general not be made, or alternatively should only be made under clearly specified situations. Institutions using this approach most effectively tend to avoid specifying standards for broad ranges of lending situations and instead focus on those areas of lending most vulnerable to excessive optimism, or where the institution expects loan volume to grow most significantly.

Formal policies can also provide lending discipline by clearly stating the type of covenants to be imposed for specific loan types. When designed and enforced properly, financial covenants can help significantly to reduce credit losses by communicating clear thresholds for financial performance and potentially triggering corrective or protective action at an early stage. Often, however, loan-approval documents do not describe the key financial covenants even when discussions with institutional staff disclose that such covenants are present. The staff and/or management of many institutions acknowledge that they have a “common practice” of imposing certain types of covenants on various types of loans. They indicate that such a practice is well known to lenders and others at the institution (but not articulated in their written loan policies), so that describing the actual covenants in the loan-approval document would be redundant. However, management and other approving authorities within an institution then receive no formal positive indication that “common practice” controls have been imposed and no indication of the level of financial performance that the covenants require of the borrower. As such, management and other approving authorities may be inadequately informed as to the risks and controls associated with the loan under consideration. In contrast, loan policies can create a clear expectation that (1) all key covenants should be described in loan-approval documents, (2) certain covenant types should be applied to all loans meeting certain criteria, and (3) explicit approval of any exception to these

policies is necessary if such covenant requirements are to be waived.

Internal processes and requirements for underwriting decisions should be consistent with the nature, size, and complexity of the banking organization’s (BO) activities. Departures from underwriting policies and standards, however, can have serious consequences for BOs of all sizes. Internal controls and credit reviews should be established and maintained to ensure compliance with those policies and procedures. When there are continued favorable economic and financial conditions, compliance monitoring of the BO’s lending policies and procedures needs to be diligent to make certain that there is no undue reliance on optimistic outlooks for borrowers. Undue reliance on continued favorable economic conditions can be demonstrated by the following characteristics:

1. dependence on very rapid growth in a borrower’s revenue as the “most likely” case
2. heavy reliance on favorable collateral appraisals and valuations that may not be sustainable over the longer term
3. greater willingness to make loans without scheduled amortization prior to the loan’s final maturity
4. willingness to readily waive violations of key covenants, to release collateral or guarantee requirements, or even to restructure loan agreements, without corresponding concessions on the part of the borrower, on the assumption that a favorable environment will allow the borrower to recover quickly

Among the adverse effects of undue reliance on a continued favorable economy is the possibility that problem loans will not be identified properly or in a timely manner. Timely identification of problem loans is critical for providing a full awareness of the BO’s risk position, informing management and directors of that position, taking steps to mitigate risk, and providing a proper assessment of the adequacy of the allowance for credit losses and capital.⁶ Similarly, an overreliance on continued ready access to financial markets on favorable terms can originate from the following situations:

6. See section 2122.0 and SR-98-25, “Sound Credit-Risk Management and the Use of Internal Credit-Risk-Rating Systems at Large Banking Organizations.” Federal Reserve guidance on credit-risk management and mitigation covers both loans and other forms of on- and off-balance-sheet credit exposure.

1. explicit reliance on future public market debt or equity offerings, or on other sources of refinancing, as the ultimate source of principal repayment, which presumes that market liquidity and the market's appetite for such instruments will be favorable at the time that the facility is to be repaid
2. ambiguous or poorly supported analysis of the sources of repayment of the loan's principal, together with implicit reliance for repayment on some realization of the implied market valuation of the borrower (for example, through refinancing, asset sales, or some form of equity infusion), which also assumes that markets will be receptive to such transactions at the time that the facility is to be repaid
3. measuring a borrower's leverage (for example, debt-to-equity) based solely on the market capitalization of the firm without regard to "book" equity, thereby implicitly assuming that currently unrealized appreciation in the value of the firm can be readily realized if needed
4. more generally, extending loans with a risk profile that more closely resembles the profile of an equity investment, under circumstances that leave additional credit or default as the borrower's only resort if favorable expectations are not met

Banking organizations that become lax in adhering to established loan-underwriting policies and procedures, as a result of overreliance on favorable economic and financial market conditions, may have significant credit concentrations that are at great risk to possible economic and financial market downturns. See SR-99-23.

Some institutions have introduced credit scoring techniques into their small-business lending in an effort to improve credit discipline while allowing heavier reliance on statistical analysis rather than detailed and costly analysis of individual loans. Institutions should take care to make balanced and careful use of credit scoring technology for small-business lending and, in particular, avoid using this technology for loans or credit relationships that are large or complex enough to warrant a formal and individualized credit analysis.

In formalizing their lending standards and practices, institutions are not precluded from making loans that do not meet all written standards. Exceptions to policies, though, should be approved and monitored by management. Formal reporting that describes exceptions to loan policies, by type of exception and organizational unit, can be extremely valuable for

informing management and directors of the number and nature of material deviations from the policies that they have designed and approved.

2010.2.2.1.2 Formal Credit-Staff Approval of Transactions

Credit discipline is also enhanced when experienced credit professionals are involved in the approval process and are independent of the line lending functions.⁷ Such staff can play a vital role in ensuring adherence to formal policies and in ensuring that individual loan approvals are consistent with the overall risk appetite of the institution. These independent credit professionals can be most valuable if they have the authority to reject a loan that does not meet the institution's credit standards or, alternatively, if they must concur with a loan before it can be approved.

Providing credit staff with independent approval authority over lending decisions, rather than with a more traditional requirement for "consultation" between the lending function and credit staff, allows credit staff to influence outcomes on a broad and ongoing basis. This influence and indeed the ability of credit staff to reinforce lending discipline is clearly enhanced by their early involvement in negotiations with borrowers; a more traditional approach might be to only involve credit staff once the loan proposal is well developed, allowing credit staff the opportunity to have only minor influence on the outcome of negotiations except in extreme cases. Maintaining a proper balance of lending and control functions calls for a degree of partnership between line lenders and credit staff, but also requires that the independence of credit staff not be compromised by conflicting compensation policies or reporting structures.

Independent credit staff can also support sound lending practice by maintaining complete and centralized credit files that contain all key documents relevant to each loan, including complete loan-approval packages. Such files ensure that decisions are well documented and avoid

7. For example, loan officers might be compensated for bringing loan business into the institution. Independent credit professionals, however, would be another person who would not be compensated for bringing any loan business into the institution. That person would, however, serve as a quality control monitor that would have the independent authority to reject a loan(s) and to ensure that the institution's risk appetite and credit standards are not exceeded.

undue reliance on the files maintained by individual loan officers.

2010.2.2.1.3 Loan-Approval Documents

Institutions can help ensure a careful loan-approval decision by requiring thorough and standardized loan-approval documents. Thoroughness can be enhanced by requiring formal analysis of the borrower's financial condition, key characteristics and trends in the borrower's industry, information on collateral and its valuation, as well as financial analysis of the entities providing support or guarantees and formal forward-looking analyses appropriate to the size and type of loan being considered. Incorporating such elements into standardized formats and requiring that analysis and supporting commentary be complete and in adequate depth allows approving authorities access to all relevant information on the risk profile of the borrower. Loan-approval documents should also include all material details on the proposed loan agreement itself, including key financial covenants. Standardization of formats, and to some extent content, can be useful in ensuring that all relevant information is provided to management and other approving authorities in a manner that is understandable. Standard formats also draw attention to cases in which certain key information is not presented.

One area of particular interest in this regard is analysis and commentary on participations in syndicated loans. While it may be tempting to rely on the analysis and documentation provided by the agent institution to the transaction, it has been long-standing Federal Reserve policy that participating institutions should conduct their own analysis of the borrower and the transactions, particularly if the risk appetite or portfolio characteristics of the agent differs from that of the participating institution.

2010.2.2.1.4 Use of Forward-Looking Tools in the Approval Process

During continued periods of favorable economic conditions, institutions should guard against complacency and, in particular, the temptation to base expectations of a borrower's future financial performance almost exclusively on that borrower's recent performance. In making lending decisions, and in evaluating their loan port-

folio, institutions should give sufficient consideration to the potential for negative events or developments that might limit the ability of borrowers to fulfill their loan obligations. Unforeseen changes in interest rates, sales revenue, and operating expenses can have material and adverse effects on the ability of many borrowers to meet their obligations. In prior decades, inadequate attention to these possibilities during the underwriting process contributed significantly to asset-quality problems in the system. Also, sudden turmoil within various countries can result in quick changes in currency valuations and economic conditions.

Examiners should evaluate the frequency and adequacy with which institutions conduct forward-looking analysis of borrower financial performance when considering an institution's credit-risk-management process. Formal use of forward-looking financial analysis in the loan-approval process, and financial projections in particular, can be important in guarding against such complacency, especially when financial institutions are competing intensely to attract borrowers. Such projections, if they include less favorable scenarios for the key determinants of the borrower's financial performance, can help to contain undue optimism and ensure that management and other approving authorities within the organization are formally presented with a robust analysis of the risks associated with each credit. They also provide credit staff and other risk-management personnel with information that is important for ensuring adherence to the institution's lending standards and overall appetite for loan risk.

The formal presentation of financial projections and/or other forms of forward-looking analyses of the borrower is important in making explicit the conditions required for a loan to perform and in communicating the vulnerabilities of the transaction to those responsible for approving loans. Analyses also provide a useful benchmark against which institutions can assess the borrower's future performance. Although it may be tempting to avoid analyzing detailed projections for smaller borrowers, such as middle-market firms, these customers may collectively represent a significant portion of the institution's loan portfolio. As such, applying formal forward-looking analysis even on a basic level assists the institution in identifying and managing the overall risk of its lending activities.

Detailed analysis of industry performance and trends can be a useful supplement to such analyses. Such projections have the most value in maintaining credit discipline when, rather than

only describing the single “most likely” scenario for future events, they characterize the kind of negative events that might impair the performance of the loan in the future.

2010.2.2.1.5 Stress Testing of the Borrower’s Financial Capacity

The analysis of alternative scenarios, or “stress testing,” should generally focus on the key determinants of performance for the borrower and the loan, such as the level of interest rates, the rate of sales or revenue growth, or the rate at which expense reductions can be realized. Meaningful stress testing of the prospective borrower’s ability to meet its obligations is a vital part of a sound credit decision. Failure to recognize the potential for adverse events—whether specific to the borrower or its industry (for example, a change in the regulatory climate or the emergence of new competitors) or, alternatively, to the economy as a whole (for example, a recession)—can prove costly to a banking organization.

Mechanical reliance on threshold financial ratios (and the “cushion” they imply) alone is generally not sufficient, particularly for complex loans and loans to leveraged borrowers or others that must perform exceptionally well to meet their financial obligations successfully. Scenario analysis specific to the borrower, its industry, and its business plan is critical to identify the key risks of a loan. Such an analysis should have a significant influence on the decision to extend credit and, if credit is extended, on the decisions as to the appropriate loan size, repayment terms, collateral or guarantee requirements, financial covenants, and other elements of the loan’s structure.

When properly conducted, meaningful stress testing can include assessing the effect the following situations or events will have on the borrower:

1. unexpected reductions in revenue growth or reversals, including shocks to revenue of the type and magnitude that would normally be experienced during a recession
2. unfavorable movements in market interest rates, especially for firms with high debt burdens
3. unplanned increases in capital expenditures due to technological obsolescence or competitive factors
4. deterioration in the value of collateral, guarantees, or other potential sources of principal repayment

5. adverse developments in key product or input markets
6. reversals in, or the borrower’s reduced access to, public debt and equity markets

Proper stress testing typically incorporates an evaluation of the borrower’s alternatives for meeting its financial obligations under each scenario, including asset sales, access to alternative funding or refinancing, or ability to raise new equity. In particular, the evaluation should focus not only on the borrower’s ability to meet near-term interest obligations, but also on its ability to repay the principal of the obligation. See SR-99-23.

2010.2.2.1.6 Management and Lender Information

Management information systems that support the loan-approval process should clearly indicate the composition of the institution’s current portfolio or exposure to allow for consideration of whether a proposed new loan—regardless of its own merits—might affect this composition sufficiently to be inconsistent with the institution’s risk appetite. In particular, institutions active in commercial real estate lending should know the nature and magnitude of aggregate exposure within relevant subclasses, such as by the type of property being financed (that is, office, residential, or retail).

In addition to portfolio information, institutions should be encouraged to acquire or develop information systems that provide ready access for lenders and credit analysts to information sources that can support and enhance the financial analysis of proposed loans. Depending on the nature of an institution’s borrowers, appropriate information sources may include industry financial data, economic data and forecasts, and other analytical tools such as bankruptcy scoring and default-probability models.

2010.2.3 LEVERAGED LENDING

Leveraged lending has been a financing vehicle for transactions involving mergers and acquisitions, business recapitalizations, and business expansions.⁸ It is an important type of financing

8. For the purpose of this guidance, references to leveraged finance, or leveraged transactions encompass the entire debt

for national and global economies, and the U.S. financial industry plays an integral role in making credit available and syndicating that credit to investors. Leveraged transactions are characterized by a degree of financial leverage that may significantly exceed industry norms as measured by ratios such as debt-to-assets, debt-to-equity, cash flow-to-total debt, or other ratios and standards that are unique to a particular industry. Leveraged borrowers, however, can have a diminished ability to respond to changing economic conditions or unexpected events, creating significant implications for an institution's overall credit-risk exposure and challenges for bank risk-management systems.

Leveraged lending activities can be conducted in a safe-and-sound fashion if pursued with a risk-management structure that provides for the appropriate underwriting, pricing, monitoring, and controls. Comprehensive credit analysis processes, frequent monitoring, and detailed portfolio reports are needed to better understand and manage the inherent risk in leveraged portfolios. Sound valuation methodologies must be used in addition to ongoing stress testing and monitoring.

Financial institutions should ensure they do not unnecessarily heighten risks by originating and then distributing poorly underwritten loans.⁹ For example, a poorly underwritten leveraged loan that is pooled with other loans or is participated with other institutions may generate risks for the financial system. The leveraged lending guidance that follows is designed to assist financial institutions in providing leveraged lending to creditworthy borrowers in a safe-and-sound manner.

On March 21, 2013, the Federal Reserve Board, along with the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency (OCC) and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), issued "Inter-

structure of a leveraged obligor (including loans and letters of credit, mezzanine tranches, senior and subordinated bonds) held by both bank and nonbank investors. References to leveraged lending and leveraged loan transactions and credit agreements refer to all debt with the exception of bond and high-yield debt held by both bank and nonbank investors.

9. For purposes of this guidance, the term "financial institution" or "institution" includes national banks, federal savings associations, and federal branches and agencies supervised by the OCC; state member banks, bank holding companies, savings and loan holding companies, and all other institutions for which the Federal Reserve is the primary federal supervisor; and state nonmember banks, foreign banks having an insured branch, state savings associations, and all other institutions for which the FDIC is the primary federal supervisor.

agency Guidance on Leveraged Lending."^{9a} The statement provides guidance about risk rating leveraged-financed loans. See SR-13-3 and its attachment.

2010.2.3.1 Interagency Guidance on Leveraged Lending

The vast majority of community banks should not be affected by this guidance, as they have limited involvement in leveraged lending. Community and smaller institutions that are involved in leveraged lending activities should discuss with their primary regulator the implementation of cost-effective controls appropriate for the complexity of their exposures and activities.^{9b}

2010.2.3.1.1 Risk-Management Framework

Given the high-risk profile of leveraged transactions, financial institutions engaged in leveraged lending should adopt a risk-management framework that has an intensive and frequent review and monitoring process. The framework should have as its foundation written risk objectives, risk-acceptance criteria, and risk controls. A lack of robust risk-management processes and controls at a financial institution with significant leveraged lending activities could contribute to supervisory findings that the financial institution is engaged in unsafe and unsound banking practices. This guidance outlines the agencies' minimum expectations on the following topics:

- Leveraged Lending Definition
- General Policy Expectations
- Participations Purchased
- Underwriting Standards
- Valuation Standards
- Pipeline Management
- Reporting and Analytics
- Risk Rating Leveraged Loans
- Credit Analysis
- Problem-Credit Management
- Deal Sponsors
- Credit Review

9a. This guidance augments previously issued supervisory statements on sound credit-risk management. Refer to SR-98-18, "Lending Standards for Commercial Loans."

9b. The agencies do not intend that a financial institution that originates a small number of less complex, leveraged loans should have policies and procedures commensurate with a larger, more complex leveraged loan origination business. However, any financial institution that participates in leveraged lending transactions should follow applicable supervisory guidance provided in "Participations Purchased" of this section.

- Stress Testing
- Conflicts of Interest
- Reputational Risk
- Compliance

2010.2.3.1.2 Leveraged Lending Definition

The policies of financial institutions should include criteria to define leveraged lending that are appropriate to the institution.^{9c} For example, numerous definitions of leveraged lending exist throughout the financial services industry and commonly contain some combination of the following:

- proceeds used for buyouts, acquisitions, or capital distributions
- transactions where the borrower's Total Debt divided by EBITDA (earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization) or Senior Debt divided by EBITDA exceed $4.0 \times \text{EBITDA}$ or $3.0 \times \text{EBITDA}$, respectively, or other defined levels appropriate to the industry or sector^{9d}
- a borrower recognized in the debt markets as a highly leveraged firm, which is characterized by a high debt-to-net-worth ratio
- transactions when the borrower's post-financing leverage, as measured by its leverage ratios (for example, debt-to-assets, debt-to-net-worth, debt-to-cash flow, or other similar standards common to particular industries or sectors), significantly exceeds industry norms or historical levels^{9e}

A financial institution engaging in leveraged lending should define it within the institution's policies and procedures in a manner sufficiently detailed to ensure consistent application across all business lines. A financial institution's definition should describe clearly the purposes and financial characteristics common to these transactions, and should cover risk to the institution

9c. This guidance is not meant to include asset-based loans unless such loans are part of the entire debt structure of a leveraged obligor. Asset-based lending is a distinct segment of the loan market that is tightly controlled or fully monitored, secured by specific assets, and usually governed by a borrowing formula (or "borrowing base").

9d. Cash should not be netted against debt for purposes of this calculation.

9e. The designation of a financing as "leveraged lending" is typically made at loan origination, modification, extension, or refinancing. "Fallen angels" or borrowers that have exhibited a significant deterioration in financial performance after loan inception and subsequently become highly leveraged would not be included within the scope of this guidance, unless the credit is modified, extended, or refinanced.

from both direct exposure and indirect exposure via limited-recourse financing secured by leveraged loans, or financing extended to financial intermediaries (such as conduits and special purpose entities (SPEs)) that hold leveraged loans.

2010.2.3.1.3 General Policy Expectations

A financial institution's credit policies and procedures for leveraged lending should address the following:

- Identification of the financial institution's risk appetite, including clearly defined amounts of leveraged lending that the institution is willing to underwrite (for example, pipeline limits) and is willing to retain (for example, transaction and aggregate hold levels). The institution's designated risk appetite should be supported by an analysis of the potential effect on earnings, capital, liquidity, and other risks that result from these positions, and should be approved by its board of directors.
- A limit framework that includes limits or guidelines for single obligors and transactions, aggregate hold portfolio, aggregate pipeline exposure, and industry and geographic concentrations. The limit framework should identify the related management-approval authorities and exception-tracking provisions. In addition to notional pipeline limits, the agencies expect that financial institutions with significant leveraged transactions will implement underwriting-limit frameworks that assess stress losses, flex terms, economic capital usage, and earnings at risk or that otherwise provide a more nuanced view of potential risk.^{9f}
- Procedures for ensuring the risks of leveraged lending activities are appropriately reflected in an institution's allowance for loan and lease losses (ALLL) and capital adequacy analyses.
- Credit and underwriting approval authorities, including the procedures for approving and documenting changes to approved transaction structures and terms.
- Guidelines for appropriate oversight by senior management, including adequate and timely reporting to the board of directors.
- Expected risk-adjusted returns for leveraged

9f. Flex terms allow the arranger to change interest-rate spreads during the syndication process to adjust pricing to current liquidity levels.

transactions.

- Minimum underwriting standards (see the “Underwriting Standards” section below).
- Effective underwriting practices for primary loan origination and secondary loan acquisition.

2010.2.3.1.4 Participations Purchased

Financial institutions purchasing participations and assignments in leveraged lending transactions should make a thorough, independent evaluation of the transaction and the risks involved before committing any funds.^{9g} They should apply the same standards of prudence, credit assessment and approval criteria, and in-house limits that would be employed if the purchasing organization were originating the loan. At a minimum, policies should include requirements for

- obtaining and independently analyzing full credit information both before the participation is purchased and on a timely basis thereafter;
- obtaining from the lead lender copies of all executed and proposed loan documents, legal opinions, title insurance policies, Uniform Commercial Code (UCC) searches, and other relevant documents;
- carefully monitoring the borrower’s performance throughout the life of the loan; and
- establishing appropriate risk-management guidelines as described in this document.

2010.2.3.1.5 Underwriting Standards

A financial institution’s underwriting standards should be clear, written, and measurable, and should accurately reflect the institution’s risk appetite for leveraged lending transactions. A financial institution should have clear underwriting limits regarding leveraged transactions,

including the size that the institution will arrange both individually and in the aggregate for distribution. The originating institution should be mindful of reputational risks associated with poorly underwritten transactions, as these risks may find their way into a wide variety of investment instruments and exacerbate systemic risks within the general economy. At a minimum, an institution’s underwriting standards should consider the following:

- Whether the business premise for each transaction is sound and the borrower’s capital structure is sustainable regardless of whether the transaction is underwritten for the institution’s own portfolio or with the intent to distribute. The entirety of a borrower’s capital structure should reflect the application of sound financial analysis and underwriting principles.
- A borrower’s capacity to repay and the ability to de-lever to a sustainable level over a reasonable period. As a general guide, institutions also should consider whether base-case cash-flow projections show the ability to fully amortize senior secured debt or repay a significant portion of total debt over the medium term.^{9h} Also, projections should include one or more realistic downside scenarios that reflect key risks identified in the transaction.
- Expectations for the depth and breadth of due diligence on leveraged transactions. This should include standards for evaluating various types of collateral, with a clear definition of credit-risk-management’s role in such due diligence.
- Standards for evaluating expected risk-adjusted returns. The standards should include identification of expected distribution strategies, including alternative strategies for funding and disposing of positions during market disruptions, and the potential for losses during such periods.
- The degree of reliance on enterprise value and other intangible assets for loan repayment, along with acceptable valuation methodologies, and guidelines for the frequency of periodic reviews of those values.
- Expectations for the degree of support pro-

^{9g}. Refer to other joint agency guidance regarding purchased participations: OCC Loan Portfolio Management Handbook, www.occ.gov/publications/publications-by-type/comptrollers-handbook/lpm.pdf, “Loan Participations”; Board Commercial Bank Examination Manual, www.federalreserve.gov/boarddocs/supmanual/cbem/cbem.pdf, section 2045.1, “Loan Participations, the Agreements and Participants”; and FDIC Risk Management Manual of Examination Policies, “Section 3.2-Loans,” www.fdic.gov/regulations/safety/manual/section3-2.html#otherCredit, Loan Participations (last updated Feb. 2, 2005).

^{9h}. In general, the base-case cash-flow projection is the borrower or deal sponsor’s expected estimate of financial performance using the assumptions that are deemed most likely to occur. The financial results for the base case should be better than those for the conservative case but worse than those for the aggressive or upside case. A financial institution may adjust the base-case financial projections, if necessary. The most realistic financial projections should be used when measuring a borrower’s capacity to repay and de-lever.

vided by the sponsor (if any), taking into consideration the sponsor's financial capacity, the extent of its capital contribution at inception, and other motivating factors. Institutions looking to rely on sponsor support as a secondary source of repayment for the loan should be able to provide documentation, including, but not limited to, financial or liquidity statements, showing recently documented evidence of the sponsor's willingness and ability to support the credit extension.

- Whether credit-agreement terms allow for the material dilution, sale, or exchange of collateral or cash-flow-producing assets without lender approval.
- Credit-agreement covenant protections, including financial performance (such as debt-to-cash flow, interest coverage, or fixed-charge coverage), reporting requirements, and compliance monitoring. Generally, a leverage level after planned asset sales (that is, the amount of debt that must be serviced from operating cash flow) in excess of 6* Total Debt/EBITDA raises concerns for most industries.
- Collateral requirements in credit agreements that specify acceptable collateral and risk-appropriate measures and controls, including acceptable collateral types, loan-to-value guidelines, and appropriate collateral-valuation methodologies. Standards for asset-based loans that are part of the entire debt structure also should outline expectations for the use of collateral controls (for example, inspections, independent valuations, and payment lockbox), other types of collateral and account maintenance agreements, and periodic reporting requirements.
- Whether loan agreements provide for distribution of ongoing financial and other relevant credit information to all participants and investors.

Nothing in the preceding standards should be considered to discourage providing financing to borrowers engaged in workout negotiations, or as part of a pre-packaged financing under the bankruptcy code. Neither are they meant to discourage well-structured, standalone asset-based credit facilities to borrowers with strong lender monitoring and controls, for which a financial institution should consider separate underwriting and risk-rating guidance.

2010.2.3.1.6 Valuation Standards

Institutions often rely on enterprise value and other intangibles when (1) evaluating the feasibility of a loan request; (2) determining the debt reduction potential of planned asset sales; (3) assessing a borrower's ability to access the capital markets; and (4) estimating the strength of a secondary source of repayment. Institutions may also view enterprise value as a useful benchmark for assessing a sponsor's economic incentive to provide financial support. Given the specialized knowledge needed for the development of a credible enterprise valuation and the importance of enterprise valuations in the underwriting and ongoing risk-assessment processes, enterprise valuations should be performed by qualified persons independent of an institution's origination function.

There are several methods used for valuing businesses. The most common valuation methods are assets, income, and market. Asset valuation methods consider an enterprise's underlying assets in terms of its net going-concern or liquidation value. Income valuation methods consider an enterprise's ongoing cash flows or earnings and apply appropriate capitalization or discounting techniques. Market valuation methods derive value multiples from comparable company data or sales transactions. However, final value estimates should be based on the method or methods that give supportable and credible results. In many cases, the income method is generally considered the most reliable.

There are two common approaches employed when using the income method. The "capitalized cash flow" method determines the value of a company as the present value of all future cash flows the business can generate in perpetuity. An appropriate cash flow is determined and then divided by a risk-adjusted capitalization rate, most commonly the weighted average cost of capital. This method is most appropriate when cash flows are predictable and stable. The "discounted cash flow" method is a multiple-period valuation model that converts a future series of cash flows into current value by discounting those cash flows at a rate of return (referred to as the "discount rate") that reflects the risk inherent therein. This method is most appropriate when future cash flows are cyclical or variable over time. Both income methods involve numerous assumptions, and therefore, supporting documentation should fully explain the

evaluator's reasoning and conclusions.

When a borrower is experiencing a financial downturn or facing adverse market conditions, a lender should reflect those adverse conditions in its assumptions for key variables such as cash flow, earnings, and sales multiples when assessing enterprise value as a potential source of repayment. Changes in the value of a borrower's assets should be tested under a range of stress scenarios, including business conditions more adverse than the base-case scenario. Stress tests of enterprise values and their underlying assumptions should be conducted and documented at origination of the transaction and periodically thereafter, incorporating the actual performance of the borrower and any adjustments to projections. The institution should perform its own discounted cash-flow analysis to validate the enterprise value implied by proxy measures such as multiples of cash flow, earnings, or sales.

Enterprise value estimates derived from even the most rigorous procedures are imprecise and ultimately may not be realized. Therefore, institutions relying on enterprise value or illiquid and hard-to-value collateral should have policies that provide for appropriate loan-to-value ratios, discount rates, and collateral margins. Based on the nature of an institution's leveraged lending activities, the institution should establish limits for the proportion of individual transactions and the total portfolio that are supported by enterprise value. Regardless of the methodology used, the assumptions underlying enterprise value estimates should be clearly documented, well supported, and understood by the institution's appropriate decisionmakers and risk-oversight units. Further, an institution's valuation methods should be appropriate for the borrower's industry and condition.

2010.2.3.1.7 Pipeline Management

Market disruptions can substantially impede the ability of an underwriter to consummate syndications or otherwise sell down exposures, which may result in material losses. Accordingly, financial institutions should have strong risk management and controls over transactions in the pipeline, including amounts to be held and those to be distributed. A financial institution should be able to differentiate transactions according to tenor, investor class (for example, pro-rata and institutional), structure, and key

borrower characteristics (for example, industry).

In addition, an institution should develop and maintain the following:

- A clearly articulated and documented appetite for underwriting risk that considers the potential effects on earnings, capital, liquidity, and other risks that result from pipeline exposures.
- Written policies and procedures for defining and managing distribution failures and "hung" deals, which are identified by an inability to sell down the exposure within a reasonable period (generally 90 days from transaction closing). The financial institution's board of directors and management should establish clear expectations for the disposition of pipeline transactions that are not sold according to their original distribution plan. Such transactions that are subsequently reclassified as hold-to-maturity should also be reported to management and the board of directors.
- Guidelines for conducting periodic stress tests on pipeline exposures to quantify the potential impact of changing economic and market conditions on the institution's asset quality, earnings, liquidity, and capital.
- Controls to monitor performance of the pipeline against original expectations, and regular reports of variances to management, including the amount and timing of syndication and distribution variances and reporting of recourse sales to achieve distribution.
- Reports that include individual and aggregate transaction information that accurately risk rates credits and portrays risk and concentrations in the pipeline.
- Limits on aggregate pipeline commitments.
- Limits on the amount of loans that an institution is willing to retain on its own books (that is, borrower, counterparty, and aggregate hold levels), and limits on the underwriting risk that will be undertaken for amounts intended for distribution.
- Policies and procedures that identify acceptable accounting methodologies and controls in both functional as well as dysfunctional markets, and that direct prompt recognition of losses in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.
- Policies and procedures addressing the use of hedging to reduce pipeline and hold exposures, which should address acceptable types of hedges and the terms considered necessary for providing a net credit exposure after hedging.
- Plans and provisions addressing contingent liquidity and compliance with the Board's

Regulation W (12 CFR part 223) when market illiquidity or credit conditions change, interrupting normal distribution channels.

2010.2.3.1.8 Reporting and Analytics

The agencies expect financial institutions to diligently monitor higher-risk credits, including leveraged loans. A financial institution's management should receive comprehensive reports about the characteristics and trends in such exposures at least quarterly, and summaries should be provided to the institution's board of directors. Policies and procedures should identify the fields to be populated and captured by a financial institution's Management Information Systems, which should yield accurate and timely reporting to management and the board of directors that may include the following:

- Individual and portfolio exposures within and across all business lines and legal vehicles, including the pipeline.
- Risk-rating distribution and migration analysis, including maintenance of a list of those borrowers who have been removed from the leveraged portfolio due to improvements in their financial characteristics and overall risk profile.
- Industry mix and maturity profile.
- Metrics derived from probabilities of default and loss given default.
- Portfolio performance measures, including noncompliance with covenants, restructurings, delinquencies, non-performing amounts, and charge-offs.
- Amount of impaired assets and the nature of impairment (that is, permanent, or temporary), and the amount of the ALLL attributable to leveraged lending.
- The aggregate level of policy exceptions and the performance of that portfolio.
- Exposures by collateral type, including unsecured transactions and those where enterprise value will be the source of repayment for leveraged loans. Reporting should also consider the implications of defaults that trigger *pari passu* (in a fair way) treatment for all lenders and, thus, dilute the secondary support from the sale of collateral.
- Secondary-market-pricing data and trading volume, when available.
- Exposures and performance by deal sponsors. Deals introduced by sponsors may, in some cases, be considered exposure to related borrowers. An institution should identify, aggregate, and monitor potential related exposures.

- Gross and net exposures, hedge counterparty concentrations, and policy exceptions.
- Actual versus projected distribution of the syndicated pipeline, with regular reports of excess levels over the hold targets for the syndication inventory. Pipeline definitions should clearly identify the type of exposure. This includes committed exposures that have not been accepted by the borrower, commitments accepted but not closed, and funded and unfunded commitments that have closed but have not been distributed.
- Total and segmented leveraged lending exposures, including subordinated debt and equity holdings, alongside established limits. Reports should provide a detailed and comprehensive view of global exposures, including situations when an institution has indirect exposure to an obligor or is holding a previously sold position as collateral or as a reference asset in a derivative.
- Borrower and counterparty leveraged lending reporting should consider exposures booked in other business units throughout the institution, including indirect exposures such as default swaps and total return swaps, naming the distributed paper as a covered or referenced asset or collateral exposure through repo transactions. Additionally, the institution should consider positions held in available-for-sale or traded portfolios or through structured investment vehicles owned or sponsored by the originating institution or its subsidiaries or affiliates.

2010.2.3.1.9 Risk Rating Leveraged Loans

Previously, the agencies issued guidance on rating credit exposures and credit-rating systems, which applies to all credit transactions, including those in the leveraged lending category.⁹¹

The risk rating of leveraged loans involves the use of realistic repayment assumptions to determine a borrower's ability to de-lever to a sustainable level within a reasonable period. For example, supervisors commonly assume that the ability to fully amortize senior secured debt or

91. Board SR-98-25, "Sound Credit Risk Management and the Use of Internal Credit Risk Ratings at Large Banking Organizations"; OCC Comptroller's Handbooks "Rating Credit Risk" and "Leveraged Lending"; and FDIC Risk Management Manual of Examination Policies, "Loan Appraisal and Classification."

the ability to repay at least 50 percent of total debt over a five- to seven-year period provides evidence of adequate repayment capacity. If the projected capacity to pay down debt from cash flow is nominal with refinancing the only viable option, the credit will usually be adversely rated even if it has been recently underwritten. In cases when leveraged loan transactions have no reasonable or realistic prospects to de-lever, a substandard rating is likely. Furthermore, when assessing debt service capacity, extensions and restructures should be scrutinized to ensure that the institution is not merely masking repayment capacity problems by extending or restructuring the loan.

If the primary source of repayment becomes inadequate, the agencies believe that it would generally be inappropriate for an institution to consider enterprise value as a secondary source of repayment unless that value is well supported. Evidence of well-supported value may include binding purchase and sale agreements with qualified third parties or thorough asset valuations that fully consider the effect of the borrower's distressed circumstances and potential changes in business and market conditions. For such borrowers, when a portion of the loan may not be protected by pledged assets or a well-supported enterprise value, examiners generally will rate that portion doubtful or loss and place the loan on nonaccrual status.

2010.2.3.1.10 Credit Analysis

Effective underwriting and management of leveraged lending risk is highly dependent on the quality of analysis employed during the approval process as well as ongoing monitoring. A financial institution's policies should address the need for a comprehensive assessment of financial, business, industry, and management risks including, whether

- cash-flow analyses rely on overly optimistic or unsubstantiated projections of sales, margins, and merger and acquisition synergies;
- liquidity analyses include performance metrics appropriate for the borrower's industry, predictability of the borrower's cash flow, measurement of the borrower's operating cash needs, and ability to meet debt maturities;
- projections exhibit an adequate margin for unanticipated merger-related integration costs;
- projections are stress tested for one or more

downside scenarios, including a covenant breach;

- transactions are reviewed at least quarterly to determine variance from plan, the related risk implications, and the accuracy of risk ratings and accrual status. From inception, the credit file should contain a chronological rationale for and analysis of all substantive changes to the borrower's operating plan and variance from expected financial performance;
- enterprise and collateral valuations are independently derived or validated outside of the origination function, are timely, and consider potential value erosion;
- collateral liquidation and asset sale estimates are based on current market conditions and trends;
- potential collateral shortfalls are identified and factored into risk rating and accrual decisions;
- contingency plans anticipate changing conditions in debt or equity markets when exposures rely on refinancing or the issuance of new equity; and
- the borrower is adequately protected from interest rate and foreign exchange risk.

2010.2.3.1.11 Problem-Credit Management

A financial institution should formulate individual action plans when working with borrowers experiencing diminished operating cash flows, depreciated collateral values, or other significant plan variances. Weak initial underwriting of transactions, coupled with poor structure and limited covenants, may make problem-credit discussions and eventual restructurings more difficult for an institution as well as result in less favorable outcomes.

A financial institution should formulate credit policies that define expectations for the management of adversely rated and other high-risk borrowers whose performance departs significantly from planned cash flows, asset sales, collateral values, or other important targets. These policies should stress the need for workout plans that contain quantifiable objectives and measurable time frames. Actions may include working with the borrower for an orderly resolution while preserving the institution's interests, sale of the credit in the secondary market, or liquidation of collateral. Problem credits should be reviewed regularly for risk rating accuracy, accrual status, recognition of impairment through specific allocations, and charge-offs.

2010.2.3.1.12 Deal Sponsors

A financial institution that relies on sponsor support as a secondary source of repayment should develop guidelines for evaluating the qualifications of financial sponsors and should implement processes to regularly monitor a sponsor's financial condition. Deal sponsors may provide valuable support to borrowers such as strategic planning, management, and other tangible and intangible benefits. Sponsors may also provide sources of financial support for borrowers that fail to achieve projections. Generally, a financial institution rates a borrower based on an analysis of the borrower's stand-alone financial condition. However, a financial institution may consider support from a sponsor in assigning internal risk ratings when the institution can document the sponsor's history of demonstrated support as well as the economic incentive, capacity, and stated intent to continue to support the transaction. However, even with documented capacity and a history of support, the sponsor's potential contributions may not mitigate supervisory concerns absent a documented commitment of continued support. An evaluation of a sponsor's financial support should include the following:

- the sponsor's historical performance in supporting its investments, financially and otherwise
- the sponsor's economic incentive to support, including the nature and amount of capital contributed at inception
- documentation of degree of support (for example, a guarantee, comfort letter, or verbal assurance)
- consideration of the sponsor's contractual investment limitations
- to the extent feasible, a periodic review of the sponsor's financial statements and trends, and an analysis of its liquidity, including the ability to fund multiple deals
- consideration of the sponsor's dividend and capital contribution practices
- the likelihood of the sponsor supporting a particular borrower compared to other deals in the sponsor's portfolio
- guidelines for evaluating the qualifications of a sponsor and a process to regularly monitor the sponsor's performance

2010.2.3.1.13 Credit Review

A financial institution should have a strong and independent credit-review function that demon-

strates the ability to identify portfolio risks and documented authority to escalate inappropriate risks and other findings to its senior management. Due to the elevated risks inherent in leveraged lending, and depending on the relative size of a financial institution's leveraged lending business, the institution's credit-review function should assess the performance of the leveraged portfolio more frequently and in greater depth than other segments in the loan portfolio. Such assessments should be performed by individuals with the expertise and experience for these types of loans and the borrower's industry. Portfolio reviews should generally be conducted at least annually. For many financial institutions, the risk characteristics of leveraged portfolios, such as high reliance on enterprise value, concentrations, adverse risk rating trends, or portfolio performance, may dictate reviews that are more frequent.

A financial institution should staff its internal credit-review function appropriately and ensure that the function has sufficient resources to ensure timely, independent, and accurate assessments of leveraged lending transactions. Reviews should evaluate the level of risk, risk rating integrity, valuation methodologies, and the quality of risk management. Internal credit reviews should include the review of the institution's leveraged lending practices, policies, and procedures to ensure that they are consistent with regulatory guidance.

2010.2.3.1.14 Stress Testing

A financial institution should develop and implement guidelines for conducting periodic portfolio stress tests on loans originated to hold as well as loans originated to distribute, and sensitivity analyses to quantify the potential impact of changing economic and market conditions on its asset quality, earnings, liquidity, and capital.^{9j} The sophistication of stress testing

^{9j} See interagency guidance "Supervisory Guidance on Stress Testing for Banking Organizations with More Than \$10 Billion in Total Consolidated Assets" (see Board SR Letter 12-7 and its attachment), 77 Fed. Reg. 29458 (May 17, 2012), at www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2012-05-17/html/2012-11989.htm, and the joint "Statement to Clarify Supervisory Expectations for Stress Testing by Community Banks," May 14, 2012, by the OCC at www.occ.gov/news-issuances/news-releases/2012/nr-ia-2012-76a.pdf; the Board at www.federalreserve.gov/newsevents/press/bcreg/bcreg20120514b1.pdf; and the FDIC at www.fdic.gov/news/press/2012/pr12054a.pdf. See also FDIC final rule, Annual Stress Test,

practices and sensitivity analyses should be consistent with the size, complexity, and risk characteristics of the institution's leveraged loan portfolio. To the extent a financial institution is required to conduct enterprise-wide stress tests, the leveraged portfolio should be included in any such tests.

2010.2.3.1.15 *Conflicts of Interest*

A financial institution should develop appropriate policies and procedures to address and to prevent potential conflicts of interest when it has equity and lending positions. For example, an institution may be reluctant to use an aggressive collection strategy with a problem borrower because of the potential impact on the value of an institution's equity interest. A financial institution may encounter pressure to provide financial or other privileged client information that could benefit an affiliated equity investor. Such conflicts also may occur when the underwriting financial institution serves as financial advisor to the seller and simultaneously offers financing to multiple buyers (that is, stapled financing). Similarly, there may be conflicting interests among the different lines of business within a financial institution or between the financial institution and its affiliates. When these situations occur, potential conflicts of interest arise between the financial institution and its customers. Policies and procedures should clearly define potential conflicts of interest, identify appropriate risk-management controls and procedures, enable employees to report potential conflicts of interest to management for action without fear of retribution, and ensure compliance with applicable laws. Further, management should have an established training program for employees on appropriate practices to follow to avoid conflicts of interest and provide for reporting, tracking, and resolution of any conflicts of interest that occur.

2010.2.3.1.16 *Reputational Risk*

Leveraged lending transactions are often syndicated through the financial and institutional markets. A financial institution's apparent failure to meet its legal responsibilities in underwriting

and distributing transactions can damage its market reputation and impair its ability to compete. Similarly, a financial institution that distributes transactions, which over time have significantly higher default or loss rates and performance issues, may also see its reputation damaged.

2010.2.3.1.17 *Compliance*

The legal and regulatory issues raised by leveraged transactions are numerous and complex. To ensure potential conflicts are avoided and laws and regulations are adhered to, an institution's independent compliance function should periodically review the institution's leveraged lending activity. This guidance is consistent with the principles of safety and soundness and other agency guidance related to commercial lending.

In particular, because leveraged transactions often involve a variety of types of debt and bank products, a financial institution should ensure that its policies incorporate safeguards to prevent violations of anti-tying regulations. Section 106(b) of the Bank Holding Company Act Amendments of 1970^{9k} prohibits certain forms of product tying by financial institutions and their affiliates. The intent behind Section 106(b) is to prevent financial institutions from using their market power over certain products to obtain an unfair competitive advantage in other products.

In addition, equity interests and certain debt instruments used in leveraged transactions may constitute "securities" for the purposes of federal securities laws. When securities are involved, an institution should ensure compliance with applicable securities laws, including disclosure and other regulatory requirements. An institution should also establish policies and procedures to appropriately manage the internal dissemination of material, nonpublic information about transactions in which it plays a role.

2010.2.4 CREDIT-RISK MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE FOR HOME EQUITY LENDING

On May 16, 2005, the federal bank and thrift regulatory agencies collectively issued the following interagency guidance. The guidance is intended to promote sound credit-risk management practices at banking organizations¹⁰ that

77 Fed. Reg. 62417 (Oct. 15, 2012) (to be codified at 12 CFR part 325, subpart C).

^{9k}. 12 USC 1972.

¹⁰. The agencies are the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Office of the Comptroller of the Cur-

have home equity lending programs, including open-end home equity lines of credit (HELOCs) and closed-end home equity loans (HELs). Banking organizations' credit-risk management practices for home equity lending need to keep pace with the rapid growth in home equity lending and should emphasize compliance with sound underwriting standards and practices.

The risk factors listed below, combined with an inherent vulnerability to rising interest rates, suggest that banking organizations need to fully recognize the risk embedded in their home equity portfolios. Following are the specific product, risk-management, and underwriting risk factors and trends that deserve scrutiny:

1. interest-only features that require no amortization of principal for a protracted period
2. limited or no documentation of a borrower's assets, employment, and income (known as "low doc" or "no doc" lending)
3. higher loan-to-value (LTV) and debt-to-income (DTI) ratios
4. lower credit-risk scores for underwriting home equity loans;
5. greater use of automated valuation models (AVMs) and other collateral-evaluation tools for the development of appraisals and evaluations
6. an increase in the number of transactions generated through a loan broker or other third party

Home equity lending can be conducted in a safe and sound manner if pursued with the appropriate risk-management structure, including adequate allowances for loan and lease losses and appropriate capital levels. Sound practices call for fully articulated policies that address marketing, underwriting standards, collateral-valuation management, individual-account and portfolio management, and servicing.

Banking organizations should ensure that risk-management practices keep pace with the growth and changing risk profile of home equity portfolios. Management should actively assess a portfolio's vulnerability to changes in consumers' ability to pay and the potential for declines in home values. Active portfolio management is especially important for banking organizations

that project or have already experienced significant growth or concentrations, particularly in higher-risk products such as high-LTV, "low doc" or "no doc," interest-only, or third-party-generated loans. (See SR-05-11.)

2010.2.4.1 Credit-Risk Management Systems

2010.2.4.1.1 Product Development and Marketing

In the development of any new product offering, product change, or marketing initiative, management should have a review and approval process that is sufficiently broad to ensure compliance with the banking organization's internal policies and applicable laws and regulations¹¹ and to evaluate the credit, interest-rate, operational, compliance, reputation, and legal risks. In particular, risk-management personnel should be involved in product development, including an evaluation of the targeted population and the product(s) being offered. For example, material changes in the targeted market, origination source, or pricing could have a significant impact on credit quality and should receive senior management approval.

When HELOCs or HELs are marketed or closed by a third party, banking organizations should have standards that provide assurance that the third party also complies with applicable laws and regulations, including those on marketing materials, loan documentation, and closing procedures. (For further details on agent relationships, see section 2010.2.4.1.3, "Third-Party Originations.") Finally, management should have appropriate monitoring tools and management information systems (MIS) to measure the performance of various marketing initiatives, including offers to increase a line, extend the interest-only period, or adjust the interest rate or term.

rency, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and the National Credit Union Administration. The interagency guidance frequently uses the term "financial institutions." Bank holding companies have financial institutions and various credit-extending nonbanking subsidiaries. The combined entity is being referred to in this guidance as a banking organization.

11. Applicable laws include the Federal Trade Commission Act; the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (ECOA); the Truth in Lending Act (TILA), including the Home Ownership and Equity Protection Act (HOEPA); the Fair Housing Act; the Real Estate Settlement Procedures Act (RESPA); and the Home Mortgage Disclosure Act (HMDA), as well as applicable state consumer protection laws.

2010.2.4.1.2 Origination and Underwriting

All relevant risk factors should be considered when establishing product offerings and underwriting guidelines. Generally, these factors should include a borrower's income and debt levels, credit score (if obtained), and credit history, as well as the loan size, collateral value (including valuation methodology), lien position, and property type and location.

Consistent with the Federal Reserve's regulations on real estate lending standards, prudently underwritten home equity loans should include an evaluation of a borrower's capacity to adequately service the debt.¹² Given the home equity products' long-term nature and the large credit amount typically extended to a consumer, an evaluation of repayment capacity should consider a borrower's income and debt levels and not just a credit score.¹³ Credit scores are based upon a borrower's historical financial performance. While past performance is a good indicator of future performance, a significant change in a borrower's income or debt levels can adversely alter the borrower's ability to pay. How much verification these underwriting factors require will depend upon the individual loan's credit risk.

HELOCs generally do not have interest-rate caps that limit rate increases.¹⁴ Rising interest rates could subject a borrower to significant payment increases, particularly in a low-interest-rate environment. Therefore, underwriting standards for interest-only and variable-rate HELOCs should include an assessment of the borrower's ability to amortize the fully drawn line over the loan term and to absorb potential increases in interest rates.

12. On December 23, 1992, the Federal Reserve announced the adoption of uniform rules on real estate lending standards and issued the Interagency Guidelines for Real Estate Lending Policies. See subsection 2010.2.1. See also 12 C.F.R., section 208.51 and appendix C.

13. The Interagency Guidelines Establishing Standards for Safety and Soundness also call for documenting the source of repayment and assessing the ability of the borrower to repay the debt in a timely manner. See 12 C.F.R. 208, appendix D-1.

14. While there may be periodic rate increases, the lender must state in the consumer credit contract the maximum interest rate that may be imposed during the term of the obligation. See 12 C.F.R. 226.30(b).

2010.2.4.1.3 Third-Party Originations

Banking organizations often use third parties, such as mortgage brokers or correspondents, to originate loans. When doing so, they should have strong control systems to ensure the quality of originations and compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, and to help prevent fraud.

Brokers are firms or individuals, acting on behalf of either the banking organization or the borrower, who match the borrower's needs with institutions' mortgage-origination programs. Brokers take applications from consumers. Although they sometimes process the application and underwrite the loan to qualify the application for a particular lender, they generally do not use their own funds to close loans. Whether brokers are allowed to process and perform any underwriting will depend on the relationship between the banking organization and the broker. For control purposes, the banking organization should retain appropriate oversight of all critical loan-processing activities, such as verification of income and employment and independence in the appraisal and evaluation function.

Correspondents are financial companies that usually close and fund loans in their own name and subsequently sell them to a lender. Banking organizations commonly obtain loans through correspondents and, in some cases, delegate the underwriting function to the correspondent. In delegated underwriting relationships, a banking organization grants approval to a correspondent financial company to process, underwrite, and close loans according to the delegator's processing and underwriting requirements and is committed to purchase those loans. The delegating banking organization should have systems and controls to provide assurance that the correspondent is appropriately managed, is financially sound, and provides mortgages that meet the banking organization's prescribed underwriting guidelines and that comply with applicable consumer protection laws and regulations. A quality-control unit or function in the delegating banking organization should closely monitor the quality of loans that the correspondent underwrites. Monitoring activities should include post-purchase underwriting reviews and ongoing portfolio-performance-management activities.

Both brokers and correspondents are compensated based upon mortgage-origination volume and, accordingly, have an incentive to produce and close as many loans as possible. Therefore, banking organizations should perform comprehensive due diligence on third-party originators

prior to entering a relationship. In addition, once a relationship is established, the banking organization should have adequate audit procedures and controls to verify that the third parties are not being paid to generate incomplete or fraudulent mortgage applications or are not otherwise receiving referral or unearned income or fees contrary to RESPA prohibitions.¹⁵ Monitoring the quality of loans by origination source, and uncovering such problems as early payment defaults and incomplete packages, enables management to know if third-party originators are producing quality loans. If ongoing credit or documentation problems are discovered, the banking organization should take appropriate action against the third party, which could include terminating its relationship with the third party.

2010.2.4.1.4 Collateral-Valuation Management

Competition, cost pressures, and advancements in technology have prompted banking organizations to streamline their appraisal and evaluation processes. These changes, coupled with banking organizations underwriting to higher LTVs, have heightened the importance of strong collateral-valuation management policies, procedures, and processes.

Banking organizations should have appropriate collateral-valuation policies and procedures that ensure compliance with the Federal Reserve's appraisal regulations¹⁶ and the Interagency Appraisal and Evaluation Guidelines (the guidelines).¹⁷ In addition, the banking organization should—

1. establish criteria for determining the appropriate valuation methodology for a particular transaction, based on the risk in the transaction and loan portfolio (For example, higher-

15. In addition, a banking organization that purchases loans subject to TILA's rules for HELs with high rates or high closing costs (loans covered by HOEPA) can incur assignee liability unless the banking organization can reasonably show that it could not determine the transaction was a loan covered by HOEPA. Also, the nature of its relationship with brokers and correspondents may have implications for liability under ECOA, and for reporting responsibilities under HMDA.

16. 12 C.F.R. 208, subpart E, and 12 C.F.R. 225, subpart G.

17. See SR-94-55, dated October 27, 1994. These revised guidelines include the June 1994 amendments. See also section 2231.0.15, appendix A.

risk transactions or nonhomogeneous property types should be supported by more-thorough valuations. The banking organization should also set criteria for determining the extent to which an inspection of the collateral is necessary.)

2. ensure that an expected or estimated value of the property is not communicated to an appraiser or individual performing an evaluation
3. implement policies and controls to preclude “value shopping” (Use of several valuation tools may return different values for the same property. These differences can result in systematic overvaluation of properties if the valuation choice becomes driven by the highest property value. If several different valuation tools or AVMs are used for the same property, the banking organization should adhere to a policy for selecting the most reliable method, rather than the highest value.)
4. require sufficient documentation to support the collateral valuation in the appraisal or evaluation

2010.2.4.1.5 AVMs

When AVMs are used to support evaluations or appraisals, the banking organization should validate the models on a periodic basis to mitigate the potential valuation uncertainty in the model. As part of the validation process, the banking organization should document the validation’s analysis, assumptions, and conclusions. The validation process includes back-testing a representative sample of the valuations against market data on actual sales (where sufficient information is available). The validation process should cover properties representative of the geographic area and property type for which the tool is used.

Many AVM vendors, when providing a value, will also provide a “confidence score,” which usually relates to the accuracy of the value provided. Confidence scores, however, come in many different formats and are calculated based on differing scoring systems. Banking organizations that use AVMs should have an understanding of how the model works as well as what the confidence scores mean. Confidence levels should be established by the banking organization that are appropriate for the risk in a given transaction or group of transactions.

When tax-assessment valuations are used as a

basis for the collateral valuation, the banking organization should be able to demonstrate and document the correlation between the assessment value of the taxing authority and the property’s market value as part of the validation process.

2010.2.4.1.6 Account Management

Since HELOCs often have long-term, interest-only payment features, banking organizations should have risk-management techniques that identify higher-risk accounts and adverse changes in account risk profiles, thereby enabling management to implement timely preventive action (e.g., freezing or reducing lines). Further, a banking organization should have risk-management procedures to evaluate and approve additional credit on an existing line or extending the interest-only period. Account-management practices should be appropriate for the size of the portfolio and the risks associated with the types of home equity lending.

Effective account-management practices for large portfolios or portfolios with high-risk characteristics include—

1. periodically refreshing credit-risk scores on all customers;
2. using behavioral scoring and analysis of individual borrower characteristics to identify potential problem accounts;
3. periodically assessing utilization rates;
4. periodically assessing payment patterns, including borrowers who make only minimum payments over a period of time or those who rely on the line to keep payments current;
5. monitoring home values by geographic area; and
6. obtaining updated information on the collateral’s value when significant market factors indicate a potential decline in home values, or when the borrower’s payment performance deteriorates and greater reliance is placed on the collateral.

The frequency of these actions should be commensurate with the risk in the portfolio. Banking organizations should conduct annual credit reviews of HELOC accounts to determine whether the line of credit should be continued, based on the borrower’s current financial condition.¹⁸

18. Under the Federal Reserve’s risk-based capital guidelines, an unused HELOC commitment with an original matu-

When appropriate, banking organizations should refuse to extend additional credit or reduce the credit limit of a HELOC, bearing in mind that under Regulation Z such steps can be taken only in limited circumstances. These include, for example, when the value of the collateral declines significantly below the appraised value for purposes of the HELOC, default of a material obligation under the loan agreement, or deterioration in the borrower's financial circumstances.¹⁹ In order to freeze or reduce credit lines due to deterioration in a borrower's financial circumstances, two conditions must be met: (1) there must be a "material" change in the borrower's financial circumstances and (2) as a result of this change, the banking organization must have a reasonable belief that the borrower will be unable to fulfill the plan's payment obligations.

Account-management practices that do not adequately control authorizations and provide for timely repayment of over-limit amounts may significantly increase a portfolio's credit risk. Authorizations of over-limit home equity lines of credit should be restricted and subject to appropriate policies and controls. A banking organization's practices should require over-limit borrowers to repay in a timely manner the amount that exceeds established credit limits. Management information systems should be sufficient to enable management to identify, measure, monitor, and control the unique risks associated with over-limit accounts.

2010.2.4.1.7 Portfolio Management

Banking organizations should implement an effective portfolio credit-risk management process for their home equity portfolios that includes the following.

2010.2.4.1.7.1 Policies

The Federal Reserve's real estate lending standards regulations require that a banking organization's real estate lending policies be consistent with safe and sound banking practices and

that the banking organization's board of directors review and approve these policies at least annually. Before implementing any changes to policies or underwriting standards, management should assess the potential effect on the banking organization's overall risk profile, which would include the effect on concentrations, profitability, and delinquency and loss rates. The accuracy of these estimates should be tested by comparing them with actual experience.

2010.2.4.1.7.2 Portfolio Objectives and Risk Diversification

Effective portfolio management should clearly communicate portfolio objectives, such as growth targets, utilization, rate-of-return hurdles, and default and loss expectations. For banking organizations with significant concentrations of HELs or HELOCs, limits should be established and monitored for key portfolio segments, such as geographic area, loan type, and higher-risk products. When appropriate, consideration should be given to the use of risk mitigants, such as private mortgage insurance, pool insurance, or securitization. As the portfolio approaches concentration limits, the banking organization should analyze the situation sufficiently to enable the banking organization's board of directors and senior management to make a well-informed decision to either raise concentration limits or pursue a different course of action.

Effective portfolio management requires an understanding of the various risk characteristics of the home equity portfolio. To gain this understanding, a banking organization should analyze the portfolio by segment, using criteria such as product type, credit-risk score, DTI, LTV, property type, geographic area, collateral-valuation method, lien position, size of credit relative to prior liens, and documentation type (such as "no doc" or "low doc").

2010.2.4.1.7.3 Management Information Systems

By maintaining adequate credit MIS, a banking organization can segment loan portfolios and accurately assess key risk characteristics. The MIS should also provide management with sufficient information to identify, monitor, measure, and control home equity concentrations.

ity of one year or more may be allocated a zero percent conversion factor if the banking organization conducts at least an annual credit review and is able to unconditionally cancel the commitment (i.e., prohibit additional extensions of credit, reduce the credit line, and terminate the line) to the full extent permitted by relevant federal law. See 12 C.F.R. 208, appendix A, III.D.4., and 12 C.F.R. 225, appendix A, III.D.4.

19. Regulation Z does not permit these actions to be taken in circumstances other than those specified in the regulation. See 12 C.F.R. 226.5b(f)(3)(vi)(A)–(F).

Banking organizations should periodically assess the adequacy of their MIS in light of growth and changes in their appetite for risk. For banking organizations with significant concentrations of HELs or HELOCs, MIS should include, at a minimum, reports and analysis of the following:

1. production and portfolio trends by product, loan structure, originator channel, credit score, LTV, DTI, lien position, documentation type, market, and property type
2. delinquency and loss-distribution trends by product and originator channel with some accompanying analysis of significant underwriting characteristics (such as credit score, LTV, DTI)
3. vintage tracking
4. the performance of third-party originators (brokers and correspondents)
5. market trends by geographic area and property type to identify areas of rapidly appreciating or depreciating housing values

2010.2.4.1.7.4 Policy and Underwriting-Exception Systems

Banking organizations should have a process for identifying, approving, tracking, and analyzing underwriting exceptions. Reporting systems that capture and track information on exceptions, both by transaction and by relevant portfolio segments, facilitate the management of a portfolio's credit risk. The aggregate data is useful to management in assessing portfolio risk profiles and monitoring the level of adherence to policy and underwriting standards by various origination channels. Analysis of the information may also be helpful in identifying correlations between certain types of exceptions and delinquencies and losses.

2010.2.4.1.7.5 High-LTV Monitoring

To clarify the real estate lending standards regulations and interagency guidelines, the agencies issued *Guidance on High Loan-To-Value (HLTV) Residential Real Estate Lending* (the HLTV guidance) in October 1999. The HLTV guidance clarified the Interagency Real Estate Lending Guidelines and the supervisory loan-to-value limits for loans on one- to four-family residential properties. Banking organizations are

expected to ensure compliance with the supervisory loan-to-value limits of the Interagency Real Estate Lending Guidelines. The HLTV guidance outlines controls that the banking organizations should have in place when engaging in HLTV lending. Banking organizations should accurately track the volume of HLTV loans, including HLTV home equity and residential mortgages, and report the aggregate of such loans to the banking organization's board of directors. Specifically, banking organizations are reminded that:

1. Loans in excess of the supervisory LTV limits should be identified in the banking organization's records. The aggregate of high-LTV one- to four-family residential loans should not exceed 100 percent of the banking organization's total capital.²⁰ Within that limit, high-LTV loans for properties other than one- to four-family residential properties should not exceed 30 percent of capital.
2. In calculating the LTV and determining compliance with the supervisory LTVs, the banking organization should consider all senior liens. All loans secured by the property and held by the banking organization are reported as an exception if the combined LTV of a loan and all senior liens on an owner-occupied one- to four-family residential property equals or exceeds 90 percent and if there is no additional credit enhancement in the form of either mortgage insurance or readily marketable collateral.
3. For the LTV calculation, the loan amount is the legally binding commitment (that is, the entire amount that the banking organization is legally committed to lend over the life of the loan).
4. All real-estate secured loans in excess of supervisory LTV limits should be aggregated and included in a quarterly report for the banking organization's board of directors.

Certain insurance products help banking organizations mitigate the credit risks of HLTV

20. For purposes of the Interagency Real Estate Lending Standards Guidelines, high-LTV one- to four-family residential property loans include (1) a loan for raw land zoned for one- to four-family residential use with an LTV ratio greater than 65 percent; (2) a residential land development loan or improved lot loan with an LTV greater than 75 percent; (3) a residential construction loan with an LTV ratio greater than 85 percent; (4) a loan on non-owner occupied one- to four-family residential property with an LTV greater than 85 percent; and (5) a permanent mortgage or home equity loan on an owner-occupied residential property with an LTV equal to or exceeding 90 percent without mortgage insurance, readily marketable collateral, or other acceptable collateral.

residential loans. Insurance policies that cover a “pool” of loans can be an efficient and effective credit-risk management tool. But if a policy has a coverage limit, the coverage may be exhausted before all loans in the pool mature or pay off. The Federal Reserve considers pool insurance to be a sufficient credit enhancement to remove the HLTV designation in the following circumstances: (1) the policy is issued by an acceptable mortgage insurance company, (2) it reduces the LTV for each loan to less than 90 percent, and (3) it is effective over the life of each loan in the pool.

2010.2.4.1.7.6 Stress Testing for Portfolios

Banking organizations with home equity concentrations as well as higher-risk portfolios are encouraged to perform sensitivity analyses on key portfolio segments. This type of analysis identifies possible events that could increase risk within a portfolio segment or for the portfolio as a whole. Banking organizations should consider stress tests that incorporate interest-rate increases and declines in home values. Since these events often occur simultaneously, the agencies recommend testing for these events together. Banking organizations should also periodically analyze markets in key geographic areas, including identified “soft” markets. Management should consider developing contingency strategies for scenarios and outcomes that extend credit risk beyond internally established risk tolerances. These contingency plans might include increased monitoring, tightening underwriting, limiting growth, and selling loans or portfolio segments.

2010.2.4.1.8 Operations, Servicing, and Collections

Effective procedures and controls should be maintained for such support functions as perfecting liens, collecting outstanding loan documents, obtaining insurance coverage (including flood insurance), and paying property taxes. Credit-risk management should oversee these support functions to ensure that operational risks are properly controlled.

2010.2.4.1.8.1 Lien Recording

Banking organizations should take appropriate measures to safeguard their lien position. They should verify the amount and priority of any senior liens prior to closing the loan. This infor-

mation is necessary to determine the loan’s LTV ratio and to assess the credit support of the collateral. Senior liens include first mortgages, outstanding liens for unpaid taxes, outstanding mechanic’s liens, and recorded judgments on the borrower.

2010.2.4.1.8.2 Problem-Loan Workouts and Loss-Mitigation Strategies

Banking organizations should have established policies and procedures for problem loan workouts and loss-mitigation strategies. Policies should be in accordance with the requirements of the FFIEC’s Uniform Retail Credit Classification and Account Management Policy, issued June 2000 (see SR-00-8 and section 2241.0) and should, at a minimum, address the following:

1. circumstances and qualifying requirements for various workout programs including extensions, re-ages, modifications, and re-writes (Qualifying criteria should include an analysis of a borrower’s financial capacity to service the debt under the new terms.)
2. circumstances and qualifying criteria for loss-mitigating strategies, including foreclosure
3. appropriate MIS to track and monitor the effectiveness of workout programs, including tracking the performance of all categories of workout loans (For large portfolios, vintage delinquency and loss tracking also should be included.)

While banking organizations are encouraged to work with borrowers on a case-by-case basis, a banking organization should not use workout strategies to defer losses. Banking organizations should ensure that credits in workout programs are evaluated separately for the allowance for loan and lease losses (ALLL), because such credits tend to have higher loss rates than other portfolio segments.

2010.2.4.1.9 Secondary-Market Activities

More banking organizations are issuing HELOC mortgage-backed securities (that is, securitizing HELOCs). Although such secondary-market activities can enhance credit availability and a banking organization’s profitability, they also pose certain risk-management challenges. A

banking organization's risk-management systems should address the risks of HELOC securitizations.²¹

2010.2.4.1.10 Portfolio Classifications, Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses, and Capital

The FFIEC's Uniform Retail Credit Classification and Account Management Policy governs the classification of consumer loans and establishes general classification thresholds that are based on delinquency. Banking organizations and the Federal Reserve's examiners have the discretion to classify entire retail portfolios, or segments thereof, when underwriting weaknesses or delinquencies are pervasive and present an excessive level of credit risk. Portfolios of high-LTV loans to borrowers who exhibit inadequate capacity to repay the debt within a reasonable time may be subject to classification.

Banking organizations should establish appropriate ALLL and hold capital commensurate with the riskiness of their portfolios. In determining the ALLL adequacy, a banking organization should consider how the interest-only and draw features of HELOCs during the lines' revolving period could affect the loss curves for its HELOC portfolio. Those banking organizations engaging in programmatic subprime home equity lending or banking organizations that have higher-risk products are expected to recognize the elevated risk of the activity when assessing capital and ALLL adequacy.²²

2010.2.5 OVERSIGHT OF CONCENTRATIONS IN COMMERCIAL REAL ESTATE LENDING AND SOUND RISK-MANAGEMENT LENDING

As part of a bank holding company inspection, the examiner should make an assessment of the

parent company's supervision and control over its subsidiary lending activities, which includes an overall assessment of the banking organization's credit-risk concentrations, including the risk concentrations in commercial real estate lending. (See also section 2010.2.) Banking organizations, including bank holding companies, are responsible for establishing the necessary and appropriate management oversight of their bank and nonbank subsidiaries by administering, monitoring, and assuring adherence to the organization's lending policies and practices for controlling "concentration risk." Banking organizations should therefore have adequate management information systems (including the appropriate accounting and internal control systems) in place to accomplish their supervisory oversight and to control such credit concentrations.

The following guidance, Concentrations in Commercial Real Estate (CRE) Lending, Sound Risk-Management Practices (the guidance) was issued on December 6, 2006 (effective on December 12, 2006).²³ The guidance was developed to reinforce sound risk-management practices for institutions (includes banking organizations) with high and increasing concentrations of commercial real estate loans on their balance sheets. An institution's strong risk-management practices and its maintenance of appropriate levels of capital are important elements of a sound CRE lending program, particularly when an institution has a concentration in CRE or a CRE lending strategy leading to a concentration. However, institutions needing to improve their risk-management processes may have been provided the opportunity for some flexibility on the time frame for complying with the guidance. This time frame will be commensurate with the level and nature of CRE concentration risk, the quality of the institution's existing risk-management practices, and its levels of capital. (See 71 *Fed. Reg.* 74,580 [December 12, 2006], the Federal Reserve Board's press release dated

21. See the risk management and capital adequacy of exposures arising from secondary-market credit activities discussion in SR-97-21 (see also section 2129.05).

22. See the January 2001 Interagency Expanded Guidance for Subprime Lending Programs (section 2128.08) for supervisory expectations regarding risk-management processes, the allowance for loan and lease losses, and capital adequacy for banking organizations engaging in subprime-lending programs.

23. The guidance was jointly adopted by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation after the bank supervisory agencies' careful consideration of the comments received following the initial issuance of the January 10, 2006, proposed guidance on concentrations in commercial real estate lending. The final guidance is applicable to state member banks and broadly applicable to bank holding companies and their nonbank subsidiaries. For the purposes of this section the references to banks, institutions, and banking organizations is confined to those entities for which the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System has supervisory authority.

December 6, 2006, and SR-07-01 and its attachments.) See also SR-15-17, “Interagency Statement on Prudent Risk Management for Commercial Real Estate Lending” and its attachment and the Board’s December 18, 2015, press release.

2010.2.5.1 Scope of the CRE Concentration Guidance

The guidance focuses on those CRE loans for which the cash flow from the real estate is the primary source of repayment rather than loans to a borrower for which real estate collateral is taken as a secondary source of repayment or through an abundance of caution. For the purposes of this guidance, CRE loans include those loans with risk profiles sensitive to the condition of the general CRE market (for example, market demand, changes in capitalization rates, vacancy rates, or rents). CRE loans are land development and construction loans (including one- to four-family residential and commercial construction loans) and other land loans. CRE loans also include loans secured by multifamily property, and nonfarm nonresidential property where the primary source of repayment is derived from rental income associated with the property (that is, loans for which 50 percent or more of the source of repayment comes from third-party, nonaffiliated, rental income) or the proceeds of the sale, refinancing, or permanent financing of the property. Loans to real estate investment trusts and unsecured loans to developers also should be considered CRE loans for purposes of this guidance if their performance is closely linked to performance of the CRE markets. The scope of the guidance does not include loans secured by nonfarm nonresidential properties where the primary source of repayment is the cash flow from the ongoing operations and activities conducted by the party, or affiliate of the party, who owns the property. Rather than defining a CRE concentration, the guidance’s “Supervisory Oversight” section describes the criteria that the Federal Reserve will use as high-level indicators to identify banks potentially exposed to CRE concentration risk.

2010.2.5.2 CRE Concentration Assessments

Banks that are actively involved in CRE lending should perform ongoing risk assessments to identify CRE concentrations. The risk assessment should identify potential concentrations by stratifying the CRE portfolio into segments that

have common risk characteristics or sensitivities to economic, financial, or business developments. A bank’s CRE portfolio stratification should be reasonable and supportable. The CRE portfolio should not be divided into multiple segments simply to avoid the appearance of concentration risk.

The Federal Reserve recognizes that risk characteristics vary among CRE loans secured by different property types. A manageable level of CRE concentration risk will vary by bank depending on the portfolio risk characteristics, the quality of risk-management processes, and capital levels. Therefore, the guidance does not establish a CRE concentration limit that applies to all banks. Rather, banks are encouraged to identify and monitor credit concentrations and to establish internal concentration limits, and all concentrations should be reported to senior management and the board of directors on a periodic basis. Depending on the results of the risk assessment, the bank may need to enhance its risk-management systems.

2010.2.5.3 CRE Risk Management

The sophistication of a bank’s CRE risk-management processes should be appropriate to the size of the portfolio, as well as the level and nature of concentrations and the associated risk to the bank. Banks should address the following key elements in establishing a risk-management framework that effectively identifies, monitors, and controls CRE concentration risk:

1. board and management oversight
2. portfolio management
3. management information systems
4. market analysis
5. credit underwriting standards
6. portfolio stress testing and sensitivity analysis
7. credit-risk review function

2010.2.5.3.1 Board and Management Oversight of CRE Concentration Risk

A bank’s board of directors has ultimate responsibility for the level of risk assumed by the bank. If the bank has significant CRE concentration risk, its strategic plan should address the rationale for its CRE levels in relation to its overall growth objectives, financial targets, and capital plan. In addition, the Federal Reserve’s real estate lending regulations require that each

bank adopt and maintain a written policy that establishes appropriate limits and standards for all extensions of credit that are secured by liens on or interests in real estate, including CRE loans. Therefore, the board of directors or a designated committee thereof should—

1. establish policy guidelines and approve an overall CRE lending strategy regarding the level and nature of CRE exposures acceptable to the bank, including any specific commitments to particular borrowers or property types, such as multifamily housing;
2. ensure that management implements procedures and controls to effectively adhere to and monitor compliance with the bank's lending policies and strategies;
3. review information that identifies and quantifies the nature and level of risk presented by CRE concentrations, including reports that describe changes in CRE market conditions in which the bank lends; and
4. periodically review and approve CRE risk exposure limits and appropriate sublimits (for example, by nature of concentration) to conform to any changes in the bank's strategies and to respond to changes in market conditions.

2010.2.5.3.2 CRE Portfolio Management

Banks with CRE concentrations should manage not only the risk of individual loans but also portfolio risk. Even when individual CRE loans are prudently underwritten, concentrations of loans that are similarly affected by cyclical changes in the CRE market can expose a bank to an unacceptable level of risk if not properly managed. Management regularly should evaluate the degree of correlation between related real estate sectors and establish internal lending guidelines and concentration limits that control the bank's overall risk exposure.

Management should develop appropriate strategies for managing CRE concentration levels, including a contingency plan to reduce or mitigate concentrations in the event of adverse CRE market conditions. Loan participations, whole loan sales, and securitizations are a few examples of strategies for actively managing concentration levels without curtailing new originations. If the contingency plan includes selling or securitizing CRE loans, management should assess periodically the marketability of

the portfolio. This should include an evaluation of the bank's ability to access the secondary market and a comparison of its underwriting standards with those that exist in the secondary market.

2010.2.5.3.3 CRE Management Information Systems

A strong management information system (MIS) is key to effective portfolio management. The sophistication of the MIS will necessarily vary with the size and complexity of the CRE portfolio and level and nature of concentration risk. The MIS should provide management with sufficient information to identify, measure, monitor, and manage CRE concentration risk. This includes meaningful information on CRE portfolio characteristics that is relevant to the bank's lending strategy, underwriting standards, and risk tolerances. A bank should periodically assess the adequacy of the MIS in light of growth in CRE loans and changes in the CRE portfolio's size, risk profile, and complexity.

Banks are encouraged to stratify the CRE portfolio by property type, geographic market, tenant concentrations, tenant industries, developer concentrations, and risk rating. Other useful stratifications may include loan structure (for example, fixed-rate or adjustable), loan purpose (for example, construction, short-term, or permanent), loan-to-value (LTV) limits, debt service coverage, policy exceptions on newly underwritten credit facilities, and affiliated loans (for example, loans to tenants). A bank should also be able to identify and aggregate exposures to a borrower, including its credit exposure relating to derivatives.

Management reporting should be timely and in a format that clearly indicates changes in the portfolio's risk profile, including risk-rating migrations. In addition, management reporting should include a well-defined process through which management reviews and evaluates concentration and risk-management reports, as well as special ad hoc analyses in response to potential market events that could affect the CRE loan portfolio.

2010.2.5.3.4 Market Analysis

Market analysis should provide the bank's management and board of directors with information to assess whether its CRE lending strategy and policies continue to be appropriate in light of changes in CRE market conditions. A bank should perform periodic market analyses for the

various property types and geographic markets represented in its portfolio.

Market analysis is particularly important as a bank considers decisions about entering new markets, pursuing new lending activities, or expanding in existing markets. Market information also may be useful for developing sensitivity analysis or stress tests to assess portfolio risk.

Sources of market information may include published research data, real estate appraisers and agents, information maintained by the property taxing authority, local contractors, builders, investors, and community development groups. The sophistication of a bank's analysis will vary by its market share and exposure, as well as the availability of market data. While a bank operating in nonmetropolitan markets may have access to fewer sources of detailed market data than a bank operating in large, metropolitan markets, a bank should be able to demonstrate that it has an understanding of the economic and business factors influencing its lending markets.

2010.2.5.3.5 Credit Underwriting Standards

A bank's lending policies should reflect the level of risk that is acceptable to its board of directors and should provide clear and measurable underwriting standards that enable the bank's lending staff to evaluate all relevant credit factors. When a bank has a CRE concentration, the establishment of sound lending policies becomes even more critical. In establishing its policies, a bank should consider both internal and external factors, such as its market position, historical experience, present and prospective trade area, probable future loan and funding trends, staff capabilities, and technology resources. Consistent with the Federal Reserve's real estate lending guidelines, CRE lending policies should address the following underwriting standards:

1. maximum loan amount by type of property
2. loan terms
3. pricing structures
4. collateral valuation²⁴
5. LTV limits by property type
6. requirements for feasibility studies and sensitivity analysis or stress testing
7. minimum requirements for initial investment

and maintenance of hard equity by the borrower

8. minimum standards for borrower net worth, property cash flow, and debt service coverage for the property

A bank's lending policies should permit exceptions to underwriting standards only on a limited basis. When a bank does permit an exception, it should document how the transaction does not conform to the bank's policy or underwriting standards, obtain appropriate management approvals, and provide reports to the board of directors or designated committee detailing the number, nature, justifications, and trends for exceptions. Exceptions to both the bank's internal lending standards and the Federal Reserve's supervisory LTV limits²⁵ should be monitored and reported on a regular basis. Further, banks would analyze trends in exceptions to ensure that risk remains within the bank's established risk tolerance limits.

Credit analysis should reflect both the borrower's overall creditworthiness and project-specific considerations as appropriate. In addition, for development and construction loans, the bank should have policies and procedures governing loan disbursements to ensure that the bank's minimum borrower equity requirements are maintained throughout the development and construction periods. Prudent controls should include an inspection process, documentation on construction progress, tracking pre-sold units, pre-leasing activity, and exception monitoring and reporting.

2010.2.5.3.6 CRE Portfolio Stress Testing and Sensitivity Analysis

A bank with CRE concentrations should perform portfolio-level stress tests or sensitivity analysis to quantify the impact of changing economic conditions on asset quality, earnings, and capital. Further, a bank should consider the sensitivity of portfolio segments with common risk characteristics to potential market conditions. The sophistication of stress testing practices and sensitivity analysis should be consistent with the size, complexity, and risk characteristics of the CRE loan portfolio. For example, well-

25. The Interagency Guidelines for Real Estate Lending state that loans exceeding the supervisory LTV guidelines should be recorded in the bank's records and reported to the board at least quarterly.

24. Refer to the Federal Reserve's appraisal regulations: 12 C.F.R. 208 subpart E and 12 C.F.R. 225, subpart G.

marginized and seasoned performing loans on multifamily housing normally would require significantly less robust stress testing than most acquisition, development, and construction loans.

Portfolio stress testing and sensitivity analysis may not necessarily require the use of a sophisticated portfolio model. Depending on the risk characteristics of the CRE portfolio, stress testing may be as simple as analyzing the potential effect of stressed loss rates on the CRE portfolio, capital, and earnings. The analysis should focus on the more vulnerable segments of a bank's CRE portfolio, taking into consideration the prevailing market environment and the bank's business strategy.

2010.2.5.3.7 Credit-Risk Review Function

A strong credit-risk review function is critical for a bank's self-assessment of emerging risks. An effective, accurate, and timely risk-rating system provides a foundation for the bank's credit-risk review function to assess credit quality and, ultimately, to identify problem loans. Risk ratings should be risk sensitive, objective, and appropriate for the types of CRE loans underwritten by the bank. Further, risk ratings should be reviewed regularly for appropriateness.

2010.2.5.4 Supervisory Oversight Of CRE Concentration Risk

As part of its ongoing supervisory monitoring processes, the Federal Reserve will use certain criteria to identify banks that are potentially exposed to significant CRE concentration risk. A bank that has experienced rapid growth in CRE lending, has notable exposure to a specific type of CRE, or is approaching or exceeds the following supervisory criteria may be identified for further supervisory analysis of the level and nature of its CRE concentration risk:

1. total reported loans for construction, land development, and other land²⁶ represent 100 percent or more of the bank's total capital²⁷ or

2. total commercial real estate loans as defined in this guidance²⁸ represent 300 percent or more of the bank's total capital, and the outstanding balance of the bank's commercial real estate loan portfolio has increased by 50 percent or more during the prior 36 months.

The Federal Reserve will use the criteria as a preliminary step to identify banks that may have CRE concentration risk. Because regulatory reports capture a broad range of CRE loans with varying risk characteristics, the supervisory monitoring criteria do not constitute limits on a bank's lending activity but rather serve as high-level indicators to identify banks potentially exposed to CRE concentration risk. Nor do the criteria constitute a "safe harbor" for banks if other risk indicators are present, regardless of their measurements under (1) and (2).

2010.2.5.4.1 Evaluation of CRE Concentrations

The effectiveness of a bank's risk-management practices will be a key component of the supervisory evaluation of the bank's CRE concentrations. Examiners will engage in a dialogue with the bank's management to assess CRE exposure levels and risk-management practices. Banks that have experienced recent, significant growth in CRE lending will receive closer supervisory review than those that have demonstrated a successful track record of managing the risks in CRE concentrations.

In evaluating CRE concentrations, the Federal Reserve will consider the bank's own analysis of its CRE portfolio, including consideration of factors such as—

1. portfolio diversification across property types
2. geographic dispersion of CRE loans
3. underwriting standards
4. level of pre-sold units or other types of take-out commitments on construction loans
5. portfolio liquidity (ability to sell or securitize exposures on the secondary market)

While consideration of these factors should not change the method of identifying a credit concentration, these factors may mitigate the risk posed by the concentration.

26. For commercial banks as reported in the Call Report FFIEC 031 and 041, schedule RC-C, item 1a.

27. For purposes of this guidance, the term *total capital*

means the total risk-based capital as reported for commercial banks in the Call Report FFIEC 031 and 041 schedule RC-R—Regulatory Capital, line 21.

28. For commercial banks as reported in the Call Report FFIEC 031 and 041, schedule RC-C, item 1a.

2010.2.5.4.2 Assessment of Capital Adequacy for CRE Concentration Risk

The Federal Reserve's existing capital adequacy guidelines note that a bank should hold capital commensurate with the level and nature of the risks to which it is exposed. Accordingly, banks with CRE concentrations are reminded that their capital levels should be commensurate with the risk profile of their CRE portfolios. In assessing the adequacy of a bank's capital, the Federal Reserve will consider the level and nature of inherent risk in the CRE portfolio as well as management expertise, historical performance, underwriting standards, risk-management practices, market conditions, and any loan loss reserves allocated for CRE concentration risk. A bank with inadequate capital to serve as a buffer against unexpected losses from a CRE concentration should develop a plan for reducing its CRE concentrations or for maintaining capital appropriate to the level and nature of its CRE concentration risk.

2010.2.6 GUIDANCE ON PRIVATE STUDENT LOANS WITH GRADUATED REPAYMENT TERMS AT ORIGATION

On January 29, 2015, interagency^{28a} guidance^{28b} was issued to provide financial institutions with principles applicable to private student loans that have graduated repayment terms. Financial institutions that originate private student loans may offer borrowers graduated repayment terms in addition to fixed amortizing terms at the time of loan origination. Graduated repayment terms are structured to provide for lower initial monthly payments that gradually increase. Refer to SR-15-2/CA-15-1 and its attachment.

Although most student loan agreements include a grace period^{28c} to help with the post-education transition, the agencies and SLC recognize that students leaving higher education programs may prefer more flexibility to transi-

tion into the labor market because of a number of factors, such as competitive job markets, traditionally low entry-level salaries, and higher student debt loads. Graduated repayment terms may align borrowers' income levels with loan repayment requirements, provide flexibility to repay the debt sooner if borrowers' incomes increase more quickly than projected, and may help long-term probability of full repayment.

Financial institutions that originate private student loans with graduated repayment terms should prudently underwrite the loans in a manner consistent with safe and sound lending practices. Financial institutions should provide disclosures that clearly communicate the timing and the amount of payments to facilitate a borrower's understanding of the loan's terms and features.

2010.2.6.1 Principles for Private Student Loans with Graduated Repayment Terms at Origination

Financial institutions should consider the following principles in their policies and procedures for underwriting private student loans with graduated repayment terms at origination:^{28d}

- *Ensure orderly repayment.* Private student loans should have defined repayment periods and promote orderly repayment over the life of the loans. Graduated repayment terms should ensure timely loan repayment and be appropriately calibrated according to reasonable industry and market standards based on the amount of debt outstanding. Graduated repayment terms should avoid negative amortization or balloon payments.
- *Avoid payment shock.*^{28e} Graduated repayment terms should result in monthly payments that a borrower can meet in a sustained manner over the life of the loan. Graduated increases in a borrower's monthly payment should begin early in the repayment period and phase in the amortization of the principal

28a. The agencies consist of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the National Credit Union Administration, and the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency.

28b. In implementing this guidance, the agencies will examine financial institutions consistent with their respective authorities.

28c. A grace period is the allotted amount of time during which borrowers are not expected to make payments on student loans after initially leaving higher education programs or dropping below half-time enrollment status.

28d. In addition to offering graduated repayment terms at origination, financial institutions may also offer graduated repayment terms as well as other types of workout options to borrowers experiencing financial difficulties, as addressed in "Banking Agencies Encourage Financial Institutions to Work With Student Loan Borrowers Experiencing Financial Difficulties," issued July 25, 2013.

28e. Payment shock occurs when a borrower experiences a significant increase in the amount of the monthly payment after a reset date.

balance to limit payment shock to the borrower.

- *Align payment terms with a borrower's income.* Graduated repayment terms should be based on reasonable assumptions about the ability to repay of the borrower and cosigner, if any. Lender underwriting should include an assessment of a borrower's (and, if applicable, a cosigner's) ability to repay the highest amortizing payment over the term of the loan. Graduated repayment terms should not be structured in a way that could mask delinquencies or defer losses.
- *Provide borrowers with clear disclosures.* Financial institutions that offer private student loans with graduated repayment terms should provide borrowers with disclosures in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations. For example, the Truth in Lending Act, as implemented by Regulation Z, includes specific private student loan disclosure content requirements.^{28f} Ensuring that disclosures clearly communicate the timing and the amount of payments facilitates borrowers' understanding of their loans' terms and features.
- *Comply with all applicable federal and state consumer laws and regulations and reporting standards.*^{28g} Private student loans with graduated repayment terms must comply with all applicable consumer protection laws. These include, but are not limited to, the Electronic Fund Transfer Act, the Equal Credit Opportunity Act, federal and state prohibitions against unfair, deceptive, or abusive acts or practices (such as section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act and sections 1031 and 1036 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act), the Truth in Lending Act, and the regulations issued pursuant to those laws.
- *Contact borrowers before reset dates.* Before originating private students loans with graduated repayment terms, financial institutions should develop processes for contacting borrowers before the start of the repayment period and before each payment reset date. These contacts can help establish student debt as a priority in borrowers' payment hierarchies^{28h} and aid borrowers in respond-

ing effectively to payment increases and other potential repayment challenges.

2010.2.7 LOAN PARTICIPATIONS, THE AGREEMENTS AND PARTICIPANTS

This subsection provides supervisory and accounting guidance for examiners to use in their inspection (or examination) and review of a bank holding company's (BHC's) or bank's use, purchase, or sale of loan participation agreements.²⁹ BHCs should manage and control aggregate credit and other risk exposures on a consolidated basis while recognizing legal distinctions and possible obstacles to asset movements within the parent company or its subsidiaries. Additional guidance, research, and information on loan participations and loan participation agreements will be developed and considered for future issuance and implementation.

A loan participation is an agreement that transfers a stated ownership interest in a loan to one or more other BHCs or subsidiaries, or other entities. The transfer represents an ownership interest in an individual financial asset. The lead BHC (or lead subsidiary) retains a partial interest in the loan, holds all loan documentation in its own name, services the loan, and deals directly with the customer for the benefit of all participants. The lead BHC or lead subsidiary should ensure that comprehensive participation agreements with originating institutions are in place for each loan facility before they consider purchasing any participating interest.

Many BHCs and their subsidiaries purchase loans or participate in loans originated by others. In some cases, such transactions are conducted with BHC affiliates, groups of BHCs or chain banks, or other subsidiaries. Alternatively, a purchasing BHC or subsidiary may also wish to supplement its loan portfolio when loan demand is weak. In still other cases, a BHC or subsidiary may purchase or participate in a loan to accommodate another unrelated bank with which it has established an ongoing business relationship.

Purchasing or selling loans, if done properly, can have a legitimate role in a BHC's or bank's overall asset and liability management and can contribute to the efficient functioning of the

^{28f.} 12 CFR 1026.46 and 12 CFR 1026.47.

^{28g.} Reporting standards include, but are not limited to, quarterly Consolidated Reports of Condition and Income.

^{28h.} Payment hierarchy refers to the prioritization of a borrower's payment obligations.

^{29.} As determined by the Board, it is permissible for a BHC or its subsidiary to make, acquire, broker, or service loans or other extensions of credit (12 CFR 225.28(b)(1) and (2)).

financial system. In addition, these activities help a BHC or bank diversify its risks and improve its liquidity.

2010.2.7.1 Board Policies on Loan Participations

BHCs and their subsidiaries should have sufficient board-approved policies in place that govern their loan participation activities. At a minimum, the policy should include (1) the requirements for entering into a loan participation agreement, (2) limits for the aggregate amount of loans purchased from and sold to an outside source, (3) limits of all loans purchased and sold, (4) limits for the aggregate amount of loans to particular industries, (5) comprehensive participation agreements with originating BHCs or banks, (6) complete analysis and documentation of the credit quality of obligations purchased, (7) an analysis of the value and lien status of the collateral, (8) appraisal guidelines, (9) the maintenance of full independent credit information on the borrower throughout the term of the loan, (10) guidelines for the timely transfer of all financial and nonfinancial credit information to participant BHCs or banks, and (11) collection procedures.

2010.2.7.2 Loan Participation Agreement

A loan participation agreement may enable a smaller lead BHC or lead subsidiary, acting as transferor, to originate a large loan in excess of its legal lending limit. Participants having an ownership interest are able to offset low local loan demand or invest in large loans without the burden of servicing the loan or incurring origination costs. A loan participation agreement may also allow the originating BHC or subsidiary to facilitate and grant a larger loan without causing it to have a concentration of credit (i.e., enabling risk diversification) or an impairment of its liquidity position. The participation agreement should contain provisions that require the originator to transfer, in a timely manner, all financial and nonfinancial credit information to the participant banks upon the loan's origination and throughout the term of the loan. The agreement should specify the allocation of payments, losses, and expenses. It should also state that a participant has the right to perform its own independent review of the transaction. The agreement should contain no language indicating that the lead BHC or lead subsidiary is a "lender" or that a participating BHC or subsidi-

ary is a "borrower." The purchase of loan participations without a comprehensive agreement could be viewed as an unsafe and unsound banking practice.

2010.2.7.3 Accounting for Loan Participations

A loan participation agreement usually is structured to allow the participation transaction to receive sale treatment of a portion of the loan by the originating BHC or its subsidiary even though the participation agreement may restrict the purchaser when reselling its interest in the loan, subject to certain conditions.³⁰ Sale treatment is achieved by structuring the loan participation agreement so that interests sold to a purchaser meet the definition of a "participating interest" and the transaction satisfies all conditions for transfer of control over the interests. In general, FAS 166 (paragraph 8B) briefly defines a participating interest as a portion of a financial asset that

1. conveys proportionate ownership rights with equal priority to each participating interest holder.
2. involves no recourse (other than standard representations and warranties) to, or subordination by, any participating interest holder.
3. does not entitle any participating interest holder to receive cash before any other participating interest holder.

A transfer of a participating interest in an entire financial asset in which the transferor surrenders control over those interests is to be accounted for as a sale if and only if all the following conditions are met:

30. Three sale recognition conditions denote the transferor's surrender of control under Financial Accounting Standards (FAS) 166, "Accounting for Transfers of Financial Assets" (an amendment of FAS 140). Those conditions must be met in order for the originator (transferor) to account for the transfer of the financial assets to the participating transferee as a sale. When a loan participation is accounted for as a sale, the seller (transferor) removes the participated interest in the loan from its financial statements. FAS 166 applies to both the transferor (seller) of the participated assets and the transferee (purchaser). (See the complete text of FAS 166 (paragraphs 8B and 9) that defines a "participating interest" and the conditions for sale recognition). See also the reporting instructions for the "Consolidated Financial Statements for Bank Holding Companies" (FR Y-9C), and the FFIEC "Consolidated Reports of Condition and Income" (FFIEC 031) (bank Call Report).

1. The transferred financial assets have been isolated from the transferor—put presumptively beyond the reach of the transferor and its creditors, even in bankruptcy or other receivership.³¹
2. Each purchaser has the right to pledge or exchange the interests it received, and no condition both constrains the purchaser from taking advantage of its right to pledge or exchange and provides more than a trivial benefit to the transferor.
3. The transferor does not maintain effective control over the interests.³²

31. Transferred financial assets are isolated in bankruptcy or other receivership only if the transferred financial assets would be beyond the reach of the powers of a bankruptcy trustee or other receiver for the transferor or any of its consolidated affiliates included in the financial statements being presented.

32. Examples of a transferor's effective control over the transferred financial assets include (a) an agreement that both entitles and obligates the transferor to repurchase or redeem the financial asset (or its third-party beneficial interests) before its maturity, (b) an agreement that provides the transferor with both the unilateral ability to cause the holder to return specific financial assets and a more-than-trivial benefit attributable to that ability, other than through a cleanup call, or (c) an agreement that permits the transferee to require the transferor to repurchase the transferred financial assets at a price that is so favorable to the transferee that it is probable that the transferee will require the transferor to repurchase them.

2010.2.7.4 Structuring the Loan Participation Agreement

The written participation agreement should consider contingent events such as a defaulting borrower, the lead BHC or lead subsidiary becoming insolvent, or a party to the participant arrangement that is not performing as expected. The agreement should clearly state the limitations the originator or participants impose on each other and any rights that the parties retain. The participation agreement should clearly include

- the obligation of the lead BHC or lead subsidiary to furnish timely credit information and to notify the parties of significant changes in the borrower's status;
- a requirement that the lead BHC or lead subsidiary consult with the participants prior to any proposed change to the loan, guarantee, or security agreements, or taking any action when the borrower defaults;
- the lead BHC's or lead subsidiary's and participants' specific rights if the borrower defaults;
- the resolution procedures to be followed when the lead BHC or lead subsidiary or participants;
 - do not agree on the procedures to be taken when the borrower defaults and/or;
 - have potential conflicts when the borrower defaults on more than one loan
- provisions for terminating the agency relationship between the lead BHC or lead subsidiary and the participants upon events such as insolvency, breach of duty, negligence, or misappropriation by one of the parties to the agreement.

Some participation agreements may allocate payments using a method other than a pro rata sharing based on each participant's ownership interest. The first principal payment could be applied based on the participant's ownership interest while the remaining payments would be applied according to the lead BHC's or lead subsidiary's ownership interest. In this situation, the participation agreement should specify that if a borrower defaults, the participants would share subsequent payments and collections in proportion to their ownership interest at the time of default.³³

A participation agreement may provide that the originating lender allow a participating BHC or subsidiary to resell, but the originator

reserves the right to call at any time from whoever holds the ownership interest. The originator can then enforce the call option by cutting off or restricting the flow of interest at the call date.³⁴ In this situation, the originating lender has retained effective control over the participation; such a call option precludes sale accounting treatment by the transferor. The transaction, therefore, should be accounted for as a secured borrowing.

2010.2.7.5 Independent Credit Analysis

A BHC or subsidiary that acquires a loan participation should regularly perform a rigorous credit analysis on its loan participation as if it had originated the loan. Due to the indirect relationship that a participant has with a borrower, it may be difficult for the participant to receive timely credit information to allow it to conduct a comprehensive credit analysis of the transaction. However, the participant should not rely solely on the originator's credit analysis. It should gather all available relevant credit information, including the details on the collateral's value (for example, values determined by an independent appraisal or an evaluation), lien status, loan agreements, and the loan's other participation agreements that existed prior to making its commitment to acquire the loan participation. A participant also should reach an agreement with the loan originator (transferor) that it will provide ongoing, complete, and timely credit information about the borrower. It is important for the participants to maintain current and complete records on their loan participations. The absence of such information may indicate that the originator did not perform the necessary due diligence prior to making its decision to acquire the loan participation. During the life of the loan participation, the originator should monitor the loan's servicing and repayment status.

2010.2.7.6 Sales of Loan Participations in the Secondary Market

If a BHC or a subsidiary has a concentration in loan participations, it may be possible for it to

34. The cash flows from a loan participation agreement, except servicing fees, should be divided in proportion to the third parties' participating interests.

33. This is *not* a participating interest—no sale.

sell its participating interests in the secondary market to reduce its dependence on an asset group. If the BHC or a subsidiary is not large enough to participate in the secondary market, an alternative might be to sell loans without recourse to another subsidiary or correspondent bank that also desires to diversify its loan portfolio.

2010.2.7.7 Sale of Loan Participations With or Without the Right of Recourse

The parties to a participation agreement (those having a participating ownership interest) generally may have *no recourse* to the transferor or to each other even though the transferor (e.g., the originating lender) continues to service the loan. No participant's interest should be subordinate to another. Some loan participation agreements, however, may give the seller a contractual right to repurchase the participated loan interest for purposes of working out or modifying the sale. When the seller has the right to repurchase the participation, it may provide the seller with a call option on a specific loan participation asset. If the seller's right to repurchase precludes the seller from recognizing the transaction as a sale, the transaction should be accounted for as a secured borrowing.

2010.2.7.8 Sales of 100 Percent Participations

Some loan participation agreements may be structured so that the transferor sells the entire underlying loan amount (100 percent) to the agreement's participants. If participation agreements are not structured properly they can pose unnecessary and increased risks (for example, legal, compliance, or reputational risks) to the originator and the participants. The originator would have no ownership in the loan. Such agreements should therefore clearly state that the loan participants are participating in the loan and that they are not investing in a business enterprise. The policies of a BHC or subsidiary engaged in such loan participation agreements should focus on safety and soundness concerns that include

- the program's objectives
- the plan of distribution
- the credit requirements that pertain to the

borrower—the originator should structure 100 percent loan participation programs only for borrowers who meet its credit requirements

- the program participant's accessibility to the borrower's financial information (as authorized by the borrower)—the originator should allow potential loan participants to obtain and review appropriate credit and other information that would enable them to make an informed credit decision.

2010.2.7.9 Participation Transactions Between Affiliates

BHCs or their subsidiaries should not relax their credit standards when participation agreements involve their affiliates. Such agreements must be structured to comply with sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act (FRA) and the Board's Regulation W. The Federal Reserve has determined that in certain very limited circumstances the purchase or sale of a participation agreement may be exempt from these provisions.

2010.2.7.9.1 Transfer of Low-Quality Assets

In general, a bank cannot purchase a low-quality asset, including a loan participation from an affiliate. Section 23A of the FRA provides a limited exception to the general rule prohibiting the purchase of low-quality assets if the bank performs an independent credit evaluation and commits to the purchase of the asset *before* the affiliate acquires the asset.³⁵ Section 223.15 of the Board's Regulation W provides an exception from the prohibition on the purchase of a low-quality asset by a member bank from an affiliate for certain loan renewals. The rule allows a member bank that purchased a loan participation from an affiliate to renew its participation in the loan, or provide additional funding under the existing participation, even if the underlying loan had become a low-quality asset, so long as certain criteria were met. These renewals or additional credit extensions may enable both the affiliate and the participating member bank to avoid or minimize potential losses. The exception is available only if (1) the underlying loan was not a low-quality asset at the time the member bank purchased its participation and (2) the proposed transaction would

35. 12 U.S.C. 371c(a)(3).

not increase the member bank's proportional share of the credit facility. The member bank must also obtain the prior approval of its entire board of directors (or its delegates) and it must give a 20-day post-consummation notice to its appropriate federal banking agency. A member bank is permitted to increase its proportionate share in a restructured loan by 5 percent (or by a higher percentage with the prior approval of the bank's appropriate federal banking agency). The scope of the exemption includes renewals of participations in loans originated by any affiliate of the member bank (not just affiliated depository institutions).

2010.2.7.10 Concentrations of Credit Involving Loan Participations

BHCs or their subsidiaries should avoid purchasing loans that generate unacceptable credit concentrations. Such concentrations may arise solely from the BHC's or subsidiary's purchases, or they may arise when loans or purchased participations are aggregated with loans originated and retained by the purchaser. The extent of contingent liabilities, holdbacks, reserve requirements, and the manner in which loans will be handled and serviced should be clearly defined. In addition, loans purchased from another source should be evaluated in the same manner as originated loans. Guidelines should be established for the type and frequency of credit and other information the BHC or its subsidiary needs to obtain from the originator to keep itself continually updated on the status of the credit. Guidelines should also be established for supplying complete and regularly updated credit information to the purchasers of loans originated and sold by the BHC or its subsidiary.

2010.2.7.11 Loan Participations and Environmental Liability

Environmental risk represents the adverse consequences that result from generating or handling hazardous substances or from being associated with the aftermath of contamination. BHCs or their subsidiaries may be indirectly liable via their lending activities for the costs resulting from cleaning up hazardous substance contamination. BHCs and their subsidiaries need to be careful that their actions making, administering, and collecting loans—including assessing and controlling environmental liability—cannot be construed as taking an active role in the management or day-to-day

operations of a borrower's business. Such actions could lead to potential liability under the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA). BHCs or their subsidiaries that originate loans to borrowers through loan participation agreements could be transferring environmental risk and liability to the holders of participations, thus making them susceptible to such losses. The originator should establish and follow policies and procedures designed to control environmental risks. See the *Commercial Bank Examination Manual*, section 2140.1 (the "Environmental Liability" subsection) for a more detailed discussion on ways banks can protect themselves as lenders, and their loan participation agreement holders, from environmental liability.

2010.2.7.12 Red Flag Warning Signals

The following conditions may indicate that there are significant problems with the management of the BHC's or a subsidiary's loan participation portfolio:

1. the absence of formal loan participation policies.
2. the absence of any formal participation agreement.
3. the absence of credit evaluations and independent credit analysis.
4. the absence of complete loan documentation.
5. a higher volume of loan participations when compared to the volume of other loans in the loan portfolio.
6. missing loan participation agreements and documentation which should denote the rights and responsibilities of all participants.
7. the existence of numerous disputes or disagreements among the participants regarding the receipt of payment(s) in accordance with the participation agreements, documentation requirements, or any other significant aspects of the entity's loan participation transactions.
8. the originator is making loan payments to loan participation acquirers without receiving reimbursement by the original borrower.

2010.2.8 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

Loan Administration

1. To determine if the parent's loan policies are

- adequate in relation to the responsibilities it has for the supervision of its credit-extending subsidiaries and whether those policies are consistent with safe and sound lending practices.
2. To determine if internal and external factors (for example, the size and financial condition of the credit-extending subsidiary, the size and expertise of its staff, avoidance of or control over credit concentrations, market conditions, and statutory and regulatory compliance) are considered in formulating and monitoring the organization's loan policies and strategic plan.
 3. To determine if the loan policy is being monitored and complied with.
 4. To establish whether the loan policy ensures sound assessments of the value of real estate and other collateral.

Lending Standards for Commercial Loans

1. To focus on and evaluate the strength of the credit-risk management process.
2. To determine whether the bank holding company has formal credit policies that (1) provide clear guidance on its appetite for credit risk and (2) support sound lending decisions.
3. To determine whether experienced credit professionals who are independent of line lending functions provide adequate internal control in the loan-approval process.
4. To evaluate whether loan-approval documents provide internal approving authorities and management with sufficient information on the risks of loans being considered, and that the information is in a clear and understandable format.
5. To evaluate whether forward-looking analysis tools are being adequately and appropriately used as part of the loan-approval process.
6. To determine whether credit-risk management information systems provide adequate information to management and lenders.
7. To incorporate the examiner's evaluation of the bank holding company's adherence to sound practices into the overall assessment of credit-risk management.
8. To be alert to indications of insufficiently rigorous risk assessment at banking organizations, particularly inadequate stress testing and excessive reliance on strong economic

conditions and robust financial markets to support a borrower's capacity to service its debts.

9. To be attentive in reviewing a banking organization's assessment and monitoring of credit risk to ensure that undue reliance on favorable conditions does not lead to delayed recognition of emerging weaknesses in some loans.
10. To ascertain whether the banking organization has relied, to a significant and undue extent, on favorable assumptions about borrowers or the economy and financial markets. If so, to carefully consider downgrading, under the applicable supervisory rating framework, a banking organization's risk-management, management, and/or asset-quality ratings and, if deemed sufficiently significant to the banking organization, its capital adequacy rating.
11. To determine if the banking organization's loan-review activities or other internal control and risk-management processes have been weakened by staff turnover, failure to commit sufficient resources, inadequate training, and reduced scope or by less-thorough internal loan reviews. To incorporate such findings into the determination of supervisory ratings.

Leveraged Lending

1. *Risk-Management Framework, Definition, and Policy Expectations.* To determine
 - a. whether the institution has established a sound definition of leveraged lending that is appropriate for the types of leveraged loans that are underwritten and if it can be applied across all business lines;
 - b. whether it has adjusted (if necessary) its risk appetite and limit structure (including pipeline limits and overall portfolio limits) to conform with the institution's definition of leveraged lending and whether it has the necessary reporting in place to assess conformance with limits.
 - c. if there are appropriate policies and procedures limits in place and if the institution maintains sound leveraged lending standards both for transactions that it intends to hold as well as transactions that are underwritten to distribute.
 - d. if the institution's risk-management structure has strong and effective processes and controls and if they are appropriate based on its leveraged lending activity.

2. *Participations Purchased.* To ensure that the institution applies the same standards of prudence and credit assessment techniques and in-house limits that would apply as if it had originated the loan(s).
3. *Underwriting Standards.* To assess the effectiveness of the institution's underwriting policy standards for leveraged lending to determine whether they
 - a. are clear, written, and measurable;
 - b. contain underwriting limits that reflect the institution's definition and risk appetite for leveraged lending;
 - c. are applied equally to loans that are originated to be held and to loans that are originated to distribute; and
 - d. fully reflect the underwriting standards listed in the guidance, including:
 - i. sound business premise and sustainable capital structure for each transaction
 - ii. capacity to repay and ability to de-lever to a sustainable level over a reasonable period
 - iii. appropriate depth and breadth of due diligence
 - iv. standards for valuating expected risk-adjusted returns
 - v. appropriate credit agreement covenant protections
 - vi. acceptable collateral agreements.
4. *Valuation Standards.* To determine:
 - a. whether enterprise valuation methodologies are appropriate to the borrower's industry and condition;
 - b. whether the assumptions are clearly documented, well supported, and understood by the institution's appropriate decision makers and risk-oversight units
 - c. whether enterprise valuations are performed by qualified persons independent of an institution's origination function
 - d. whether an institution has policies and provides for appropriate loan to value ratios, discount rates and collateral margins for loans dependent on enterprise value or illiquid and hard-to-value collateral.
5. *Pipeline Management.* To find out if there are strong risk-management standards and controls over transactions in and to the pipeline and if those standards are applied uniformly to transactions held in the portfolio and those that are distributed.
6. *Reporting and Analytics.*
 - a. To determine if individual and portfolio exposures within and across all business lines and legal vehicles are captured and reported in the appropriate amount of detail to senior management and the board.
 - b. To determine if the necessary risk information (as outlined in the guidance) about leveraged lending exposures (portfolio holds and pipeline exposures) are captured in reports that are distributed timely and that adequate information is distributed to senior management and the institution's board of directors at least quarterly.
7. *Risk Rating.* To verify that leveraged loans are risk rated based on the borrower's ability to repay and de-lever to a sustainable level.
8. *Credit Analysis.*
 - a. To test transactions to determine if underwriting practices are effective and comprehensive.
 - b. To determine if individual leveraged lending exposures contain a comprehensive assessment of financial, business, industry, and management risks based on the elements of the guidance.
9. *Problem Credit Management.*
 - a. To ascertain whether the institution formulates individual action plans and expectations
 - b. To evaluate workout plans to confirm that they contain quantifiable objectives and measureable time frames
 - c. To determine if problem credits are regularly reviewed for risk-rating accuracy, accrual status, impairment status, and charge off.
10. *Deal Sponsors*
 - a. To determine if the institution has guidelines for evaluating deal sponsors that are based on the sponsor's ability and willingness to support the transaction where sponsors are viewed as a source of repayment.
11. *Credit Review*
 - a. To ensure that the institution regularly conducts an independent credit review of the leveraged lending portfolio more frequently and in greater depth than other segments of the portfolio generally at least annually. For firms making significant changes to policies, underwriting standards, procedures etc., ensure that a credit review is scheduled to test compliance with changes.
 - b. To ensure that credit review personnel

have the expertise and experience to evaluate leveraged loans.

12. *Stress Testing.*

- a. To determine if the institution is conducting periodic loan- and portfolio stress tests on leveraged loan portfolios or if the portfolio has been incorporated into enterprise-wide stress testing practices.
- b. To verify the effectiveness of the institution's periodic portfolio stress tests (in accordance with stress testing guidance) in identifying what effect economic and market events could have on the institution's financial condition and leveraged lending transactions.

13. *Conflict of Interest.* To determine

- a. if policies identify and if there are procedures to address transactions in which the institution holds both an equity and lending positions;
- b. the adequacy and effectiveness of controls and training programs that aim to curb any potential conflicts of interests that result from leveraged lending.

14. *Reputational Risk.*

- a. To determine if the institution has suffered reputational damage by failing to meet its legal responsibilities in underwriting and syndicating leveraged loan transactions into the wider financial market.

Credit-Risk Management for Home Equity Lending

1. To determine if the banking organization has an appropriate review and approval process for new product offerings, product changes, and marketing initiatives.
2. To ascertain whether the banking organization has appropriate control procedures for third parties that generate loans on its behalf and if the control procedures comply with the laws and regulations that are applicable to the organization.
3. To determine if the banking organization has given full recognition to the risks embedded in its home equity lending.
4. To determine whether the banking organization's risk-management practices have kept pace with the growth and changing risk profile of its home equity portfolios and whether underwriting standards have eased.
5. To determine whether the loan policy—

- a. ensures prudent underwriting standards for home equity lending, including standards to ensure that a thorough evaluation of a borrower's capacity to service the debt is conducted (that is, the banking organization is not relying solely on the borrower's credit score);
- b. provides risk-management safeguards for potential declines in home values;
- c. ensures that the standards for interest-only and variable-rate home equity lines of credit (HELOCs) include an assessment of a borrower's ability to (1) amortize the fully drawn line of credit over the loan term and (2) absorb potential increases in interest rates; and
- d. provides appropriate collateral-valuation policies and procedures and provides for the use and validation of automated valuation models.

Loan Participations, the Agreements and Participants

1. To ascertain if the BHC engages in the purchase or sale of loans via loan participation agreements.
2. To determine if the BHC's lending policy
 - a. places limits on the amount of loan participations originated, purchased, or sold based on any one source or in the aggregate;
 - b. has set credit standards for the BHC's borrowers requesting loans as well as third parties acquiring loan participations from the bank as originator;
 - c. requires the same credit standards for loan participations as it does for other loans;
 - d. sets the amount of contingent liability, holdback (retained ownership), and the manner in which the loan should be serviced; or
 - e. requires complete loan documentation for loan participations.
3. To assess the impact of any concentrations of credit to a borrower, or in the aggregate, that arise from loans involved in loan participation agreements.
4. To determine if there are any informal repurchase agreements that exist between loan participation acquirers that are designed to circumvent the originating BHC's or its subsidiary's legal lending limits, disguise delinquencies, and avoid adverse classifications.
5. To determine whether the BHC's financial condition is compromised by assessing the impact of the BHC's loan participations with

its affiliates.

6. To ascertain whether loan participation transactions with affiliates are in compliance with sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act and the Board's Regulation W.
7. To determine if there are disputes between the BHC or its subsidiaries as originator of loan participations and its participants.
8. To determine if any loan participations have been adversely classified by examiners, including examiners from other supervisory agencies (includes loan participations held by the other institutions).

2010.2.9 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

Loan Administration

1. Obtain an organizational chart and determine the various levels of responsibility and job functions of individuals involved with the lending function.
2. Obtain and review the BHC's loan policy; determine if the policy contains the appropriate components, as summarized in this section. Determine how the policy is communicated to subsidiaries. Also determine whether the loan policy reflects the December 1992 uniform interagency real estate lending standards and guidelines as they apply to subsidiary depository institutions.
3. Obtain a copy of the most recent management reports concerning the quality of loans and other aspects of the loan portfolio (delinquency list, concentrations, yield analysis, loan-distribution lists, watch loan reports, charge-off reports, participation listings, internal and external audit reports, etc.). Determine the scope and sufficiency of the work performed by any committees related to the lending function. Determine if the information provided to the directorate and senior management is sufficient for them to make judgments about the quality of the portfolio and to determine appropriate corrective action.
4. Determine if an internal process has been established for the review and approval of loans that do not conform to internal lending policy. Establish whether such loans are supported by written documentation that clearly states all the relevant credit factors that culminated in the underwriting decision. Determine if exception loans of a significant size are reported to the board of directors of the subsidiary or to the holding company.
5. Review internal and external audit reports

and bank examination reports for critical comments concerning loan-policy exceptions and administration. Determine whether action was taken in response to any identified exceptions. Determine who is responsible for follow-up and what the time frames are; seek rationale if no action was taken or if the action taken was half-hearted.

6. Review the organization's financial statements, the bank Call Reports, and the BHC FR Y-series reports submitted to the Federal Reserve. Determine whether reporting is accurate and disclosure is sufficient to indicate the organization's financial position and the nature of its loan portfolios, including nonaccrual loans.
7. When reviewing lending policies, ascertain whether—
 - a. the loan policies facilitate extensions of credit to sound borrowers and facilitate the workout of problem loans, and
 - b. the loan policies control and reduce concentration risk by placing emphasis on effective internal policies, systems, and controls to monitor the risk.
8. Through interviews with, or review of reports submitted by, the internal auditor, lending officers, loan-review personnel, and senior management, (1) evaluate the effectiveness of the BHC's self-monitoring of adherence to loan policy, (2) determine how changes to the loan policy occur, (3) determine how loans made in contradiction to the loan policy are explained, and (4) determine the various circumstances involving levels of approval and what specific consideration occurs at these levels.
9. Presuming the inspection is concurrent with a bank's primary regulator, coordinate, on a random basis, the selection of loans subject to classification. Determine whether they conform to loan policy.
10. Review management's policies and procedures for their determination of an appropriate level of loan-loss reserves.
11. On the "Policies and Supervision" or an equivalent page of the inspection report, evaluate the BHC's oversight regarding effective lending policy and procedures.

Lending Standards for Commercial Loans

1. Review formal credit policies for clear articulation of current lending standards,

- including—
- a. a description of the characteristics of acceptable loans and (if applicable) “guidance” minimum financial ratios,
 - b. standards for the types of covenants to be imposed for specific loan types, and
 - c. the treatment and reporting of policy exceptions, both for individual loans and the entire portfolio.
2. Evaluate the role played by independent credit staff in loan approvals and, in particular, whether these credit professionals are adequately experienced, are independent of line lending functions, and have authority to reject loans either because of specific exceptions to policy or because the loan does not meet the institution’s credit-risk appetite.
 3. Review written policies and determine operating practice in preparing loan-approval documents to evaluate whether sufficient information is provided on the characteristics and risks of loans being considered, and whether such information is provided clearly and can be easily understood.
 4. Based on written policies and review of operating practice, evaluate whether loans being considered are evaluated not only on the basis of the borrower’s current performance but on the basis of forward-looking analysis of the borrower.
 - a. Determine whether financial projections or other forward-looking tools are an integral part of the preapproval analysis and loan-approval documents.
 - b. Determine the extent to which alternative or “downside” scenarios are identified, considered, and analyzed in the loan-approval process.
 5. Review credit-risk management information systems and reports to determine whether they provide adequate information to management and lenders about—
 - a. the composition of the institution’s current portfolio or exposure, to allow for consideration of whether proposed loans might affect this composition sufficiently to be inconsistent with the institution’s risk appetite, and
 - b. data sources, analytical tools, and other information to support credit analysis.
 6. When appropriate, coordinate or conduct sufficient loan reviews and transaction testing in the lending function to accurately determine the quality of loan portfolios and other credit exposures. If deficiencies in lending practices or credit discipline are indicated as a result of the preexamination risk assessment, the inspection, or bank or other examinations, arrange for the commitment of sufficient supervisory resources to conduct in-depth reviews, including transaction testing, that are adequate to ensure that the Federal Reserve achieves a full understanding of the nature, scope, and implications of the deficiencies.
 7. When reviewing loans, lending policies, and lending practices—
 - a. observe and analyze loan-pricing policies and practices to determine whether the institution may be unduly weighting the short-term benefit of retaining or attracting new customers through price concessions, while not giving sufficient consideration to potential longer-term consequences;
 - b. be alert for indications of insufficiently rigorous risk assessment, in particular (1) excessive reliance on strong economic conditions and robust financial markets to support the capacity of borrowers to service their debts and (2) inadequate stress testing;
 - c. be attentive in reviewing an institution’s assessment and monitoring of credit risk to ensure that undue reliance on favorable conditions does not lead that institution to delay recognition of emerging weaknesses in some loans or to lessen staff resources assigned to internal loan review;³⁶ and
 - d. give careful consideration to downgrading, under the applicable supervisory rating framework, a banking organization’s risk-management, management, and/or asset-quality ratings and its capital adequacy rating (if sufficiently significant) when there is significant and undue reliance on favorable assumptions about borrowers or the economy and financial markets, or when that reliance has slowed the recognition of loan problems.
 8. Discuss matters of concern with the senior management and the board of directors of the bank holding company and report those areas of concern on core page 1, “Examiner’s Comments and Matters Requiring Special Board Attention.”

36. Examiners should recognize that an increase in classified or special-mention loans is not per se an indication of lax lending standards. Examiners should review and consider the nature of these increases and the surrounding circumstances in reaching their conclusions about the asset quality and risk management of an institution.

Leveraged Lending

Overview

Complete or update the Leveraged Lending Internal Control Questionnaire if selected for implementation.

1. Based on an evaluation of internal controls, determine the scope of the inspection. The scope should include exposures related through common ownership, guarantors, or sponsors. Also include direct and indirect leveraged lending exposure found in financial intermediaries formed to house or distribute leveraged loans (for example CLOs, SPEs, conduits etc.).
2. Inspection procedures should include both a policy review and transaction testing approach to determine the effectiveness of the institution's leveraged lending control process.

If the institution is found to lack robust risk-management processes and controls around leveraged lending that reinforces the institution's risk profile, a supervisory finding of unsafe and unsound banking practices should be considered.

3. Applicability/Risk Management Framework
 - a. At the start of the inspection, ascertain whether the institution has adopted an appropriate risk-management framework for leveraged lending that includes robust policies, procedures, and risk limits that have been approved by the board of directors.
 - b. Implementation of this guidance should be consistent with the size and risk profile of the institution.
 - c. All aspects of the guidance should be applied to institutions that originate and distribute leveraged loans.
 - d. The section on Participations Purchased should be applied to banking organizations that have limited involvement in leveraged lending; community banks overall may not be materially affected by the guidance.
4. Definition of Leveraged Lending
 - a. Determine if the institution has a written policy for leveraged lending and if that policy contains criteria for defining leveraged lending that are appropriate for the institution and consistent with the guidance standards.
 - b. Determine if the institution's definition

includes related exposures and direct and indirect exposures.

5. General Policy Expectations

- a. Review the policy for the key risk elements referred to in the guidance (See the section on General Policy Expectations in the guidance and in the Internal Control Questionnaire). Determine if the policy includes the following elements:
 - Risk Appetite that clearly defines the amount of leveraged lending the institution is willing to underwrite and is willing to retain.
 - Limit Framework for aggregate portfolio held on balance sheet, single obligors and transactions, aggregate pipeline exposure, industry and geographic concentrations. For institutions with significant underwriting exposure, determine if limits have been established for stress losses, flex terms, economic capital, or earnings at risk associated with leveraged loans.
 - Allowance for loan and lease losses (ALLL) and capital adequacy analysis that reflect the risk of leveraged lending activities.
 - Credit approval and underwriting authorities.
 - Guidelines for senior management oversight and timely reporting to senior management and the board of directors.
 - Expected risk adjusted returns.
 - Minimum underwriting standards.
 - Underwriting practices for origination and secondary loan acquisition.

6. Participations Purchased

- a. Ascertain if the institution participating or purchasing into a leveraged loan has a clear understanding of the credit and the risks involved and also has a clear understanding of its rights and responsibilities under the participation agreement.
- b. Determine if the institution has conducted its own independent underwriting of participations and has applied the same standards of prudence, credit assessment techniques, and in-house limits as if the institution had originated the loan(s).
- c. Verify that the institution has received copies of all participation documents and any other documents relevant to the credit transaction(s).

7. Underwriting Standards

- a. Determine if the institution employs similar and consistent underwriting standards for leveraged loans it plans to hold or it plans to distribute.
 - Confirm that the institution's underwriting standards are clear, written, measurable, and reflect the institution's policy-based risk appetite for leveraged lending.
 - Evaluate the underwriting policies and standards and determine if they contain the elements found in guidance (Refer to the section on Underwriting Standards in the guidance and in the Internal Control Questionnaire):

8. Valuation Standards

- a. Confirm that the institution has policies and procedures in place for estimating enterprise value or for valuing other illiquid collateral. If enterprise value is relied on as a secondary source of repayment, determine the following:
 - If one or a combination of the three methods referred to in the guidance is used (asset, income, or market valuation).
 - If the underlying assumptions and the resulting values are well documented, supportable, and credible (Refer to the Valuations Standards section of the guidance and the Internal Control Questionnaire).
 - If enterprise value was calculated by qualified persons independent of the origination function.
 - If stress tests of key enterprise value variables and assumptions (such as cash flow earnings and sales multiples) are conducted.
 - That firms have policies that provide for appropriate loan-to-value ratios, discount rates and collateral margins.
 - If the institution has established limits for the proportion of individual transactions and the total portfolio that are supported by enterprise value.

9. Pipeline Management

- a. Determine if the institution has strong risk management and controls that are extended to deals in the pipeline, whether those deals are intended for hold, or if they are intended for distribution.
 - Determine if the institution has poli-

cies and procedures for handling distribution failures.

- Determine if there are procedures for stress testing pipeline deals.
- Ascertain if management reports show that transactions can be differentiated based on their key characteristics, tenor, and investor class (pro-rata and institutional), structure, and key borrower characteristics (for example, industry).
- Determine if there are clearly articulated rationales for the effectiveness of hedging methods and if there is appropriate measurement and monitoring.
- Confirm that the institution has developed and maintained the pipeline procedures referred to in the guidance (see the section on Pipeline Management in the guidance and in the Internal Control Questionnaire).

10. Reporting and Analytics

- a. Ascertain if the institution's risk-management framework includes an intensive and frequent review and monitoring process.
- b. Establish whether management receives comprehensive reports about the characteristics and trends of the institution's leveraged-lending portfolio at least quarterly and if summaries are provided to the board of directors.
- c. Find out if internal reports provide a detailed and comprehensive view of global exposures, including situations when an institution has an indirect exposure to an obligor or is holding a previously sold position as collateral or as a reference asset in a derivative. Borrower and counterparty leveraged lending reporting should aggregate total exposure and consider exposures booked across business lines or legal entities.
- d. Verify that internal policies identify the data fields to be populated and captured by the institution's MIS and whether the reports are accurate, timely, and if the information is provided to management and the board of directors.
- e. Confirm that MIS reporting on the leveraged lending portfolio contains the applicable measures listed in the guidance. (Refer to the section on Reporting and Analytics in the guidance and in the Internal Control Questionnaire.)

11. Credit Analysis

- a. Conduct transaction testing on individual leveraged lending credits to determine if

- the credit analysis contains a comprehensive assessment of financial, business, and industry and management risks.
- b. Evaluate individual credits to determine if they fit the institutions definition of a leveraged loan.
 - c. Determine if individual credits were analyzed in conjunction with the parameters in the guidance. (Refer to the section on Credit Analysis in the guidance and in the Internal Control Questionnaire).
 - d. Verify that there are guidelines for evaluating deal sponsors and their willingness and ability to support the credit.
 - e. Confirm that sponsors are used as a secondary and not a primary source of repayment.
 - f. Assess the credit agreement to determine if it contains language for:
 - Material dilution, sale, or exchange of collateral or cash flow producing assets without lender approval.
 - Financial performance covenants; covenant-lite, and payment-in-kind (PIK) toggle loan structures
 - Reporting requirements and compliance monitoring.
 - The distribution of reporting and other credit information to participants and investors.
 - Acceptable collateral types, loan to value guidelines and appropriate collateral valuation methodologies
12. Internal Risk Rating
- a. Determine if individual loans are risk rated based on the borrower's demonstrated ability to repay the loan and de-lever over a reasonable period of time.
 - Confirm that the institution has evidence of adequate repayment capacity, for example borrowers demonstrate the ability to fully amortize senior debt or repay at least 50 percent of total debt over a 5–7 year period. Ensure that extensions or other restructuring are not masking an inability to repay.
 - Consider adversely rating credits that do not show the capacity to pay down debt from cash flow or if refinancing is the only option for repayment.
 - Consider a substandard rating if there are no reasonable or realistic prospects for repayment or de-levering.
13. Deal Sponsors
- a. If a deal sponsor is relied on as a secondary source of repayment, determine if management has developed guidelines for evaluating the sponsor's creditworthiness.
 - b. Evaluate the sponsor based on the criteria listed in the guidance (See the section on Deal Sponsors in the guidance and in the Internal Control Questionnaire).
14. Credit Review/Problem Credit Management
- a. Assess credit review staff's expertise relative to leveraged lending.
 - b. Verify that the institution conducts frequent internal credit review of leveraged-lending portfolio that is done independently of the origination function. Portfolio reviews should generally be conducted no less than annually.
 - c. Evaluate the institution's procedures for dealing with problem credits including if work out plans contain quantifiable objectives and measurable time frames.
15. Stress Testing
- a. Determine if the institution has developed stress tests for leveraged loans or if the loans are included in the existing stress testing protocol.
16. Conflicts of Interest/Reputational Risk/Compliance
- a. Confirm that the institution is meeting its legal responsibilities by underwriting and distributing transactions that do not result in undue reputational risk.
 - b. Determine if potential conflicts of interest exist if the institution has both equity and lending positions in a particular transaction. Confirm that policies and procedures are in place to handle conflicts of interest.
 - c. Ascertain whether the institution's compliance function periodically reviews the institution's leveraged-lending activity.
 - d. Ascertain whether the institution's policies incorporate safeguards to prevent violations of anti-tying regulations.
 - e. When securities are involved, determine how the institution ensures compliance with applicable securities laws, including disclosure and other regulatory requirements.
 - f. Ascertain what plans and provisions have been developed to ensure compliance with the Board's Regulation W (12 CFR part 223).

Credit-Risk Management for Home Equity Lending

1. Review the credit policies for home equity lending to determine if the underwriting standards address all relevant risk factors (that is, an analysis of a borrower's income and debt levels, credit score, and credit history versus the loan's size, the collateral value (including valuation methodology), the lien position, and the property type and location).
2. Determine whether the banking organization's underwriting standards include—
 - a. a properly documented evaluation of the borrower's financial capacity to adequately service the debt and
 - b. an adequately documented evaluation of the borrower's ability to (1) amortize the fully drawn line of credit over the loan term and (2) absorb potential increases in interest rates for interest-only and variable-rate HELOCs.
3. Assess the reasonableness and adequacy of the analyses and methodologies underlying the banking organization's evaluation of borrowers.
4. If the organization uses third parties to originate home equity loans, find out—
 - a. if the organization delegates the underwriting function to a broker or correspondent;
 - b. if the banking organization's internal controls for delegated underwriting are adequate;
 - c. whether the banking organization retains appropriate oversight of all critical loan-processing activities, such as verification of income and employment and the independence of the appraisal and evaluation function;
 - d. if there are adequate systems and controls to ensure that a third-party originator is appropriately managed, is financially sound, provides mortgages that meet the banking organization's prescribed underwriting guidelines, and adheres to applicable consumer protection laws and regulations;
 - e. if the banking organization has a quality-control unit or function that closely monitors (monitoring activities should include post-purchase underwriting reviews and ongoing portfolio-performance-management activities) the quality of loans that the third party underwrites; and
- f. whether the banking organization has adequate audit procedures and controls to verify that third parties are not being paid to generate incomplete or fraudulent mortgage applications or are not otherwise receiving referral or unearned income or fees contrary to RESPA prohibitions.
5. Evaluate the adequacy of the banking organization's collateral-valuation policies and procedures. Ascertain whether the organization—
 - a. establishes criteria for determining the appropriate valuation methodology for a particular transaction (based on the risk in the transaction and loan portfolio);
 - b. sets criteria for determining when a physical inspection of the collateral is necessary;
 - c. ensures that an expected or estimated value of the property is not communicated to an appraiser or individual performing an evaluation;
 - d. implements policies and controls to preclude "value shopping";
 - e. requires sufficient documentation to support the collateral valuation in the appraisal or evaluation.
6. If the banking organization uses automated valuation models (AVMs) to support evaluations or appraisals, find out if the organization—
 - a. periodically validates the models, to mitigate the potential valuation uncertainty in the model;
 - b. adequately documents the validation's analysis, assumptions, and conclusions;
 - c. back-tests a representative sample of evaluations and appraisals supporting loans outstanding; and
 - d. evaluates the reasonableness and adequacy of its procedures for validating AVMs.
7. If tax-assessment valuations are used as a basis for collateral valuation, ascertain whether the banking organization is able to demonstrate and document the correlation between the assessment value of the taxing authority and the property's market value, as part of the validation process.
8. Review the risk- and account-management procedures. Verify that the procedures are appropriate for the size of the banking organization's loan portfolio, as well as for the risks associated with the types of home equity lending conducted by the

- organization.
9. If the banking organization has large home equity loan portfolios or portfolios with high-risk characteristics, determine if the organization—
 - a. periodically refreshes credit-risk scores on all customers;
 - b. uses behavioral scoring and analysis of individual borrower characteristics to identify potential problem accounts;
 - c. periodically assesses utilization rates;
 - d. periodically assesses payment patterns, including borrowers who make only minimum payments over a period of time or those who rely on the credit line to keep payments current;
 - e. monitors home values by geographic area; and
 - f. obtains updated information on the collateral's value when significant market factors indicate a potential decline in home values, or when the borrower's payment performance deteriorates and greater reliance is placed on the collateral.

Determine that the frequency of these actions is commensurate with the risk in the portfolio.
 10. Verify that annual credit reviews of home equity line of credit (HELOC) accounts are conducted. Verify if the reviews of HELOC accounts determine whether the line of credit should be continued, based on the borrower's current financial condition.
 11. Determine that authorizations of over-limit home equity lines of credit are restricted and subject to appropriate policies and controls.
 - a. Verify that the banking organization requires over-limit borrowers to repay, in a timely manner, the amount that exceeds established credit limits.
 - b. Evaluate the sufficiency of management information systems (MIS) that enable management to identify, measure, monitor, and control the risks associated with over-limit accounts.
 12. Verify that the organization's real estate lending policies are consistent with safe and sound banking practices and that its board of directors reviews and approves the policies at least annually.
 13. Determine whether the MIS—
 - a. allows for the segmentation of the loan portfolios;
 - b. accurately assesses key risk characteristics;
 - c. provides management with sufficient information to identify, monitor, measure, and control home equity concentrations.
 14. Determine whether management periodically assesses the adequacy of its MIS, in light of growth and changes in the banking organization's risk appetite.
 15. If the banking organization has significant concentrations of home equity loans (HELs) or HELOCs, determine if the MIS includes, at a minimum, reports and analysis of the following:
 - a. production and portfolio trends by product, loan structure, originator channel, credit score, loan to value (LTV), debt to income (DTI), lien position, documentation type, market, and property type
 - b. the delinquency and loss-distribution trends by product and originator channel, with some accompanying analysis of significant underwriting characteristics (such as credit score, LTV, or DTI)
 - c. vintage tracking
 - d. the performance of third-party originators (brokers and correspondents)
 - e. market trends by geographic area and property type, to identify areas of rapidly appreciating or depreciating housing values
 16. Determine whether the banking organization accurately tracks the volume of high-LTV (HLTV) loans, including HLTV home equity and residential mortgages, and if the organization reports the aggregate of these loans to its board of directors.
 17. Determine whether loans in excess of the supervisory LTV limits are identified as high-LTV loans in the banking organization's records. Determine whether the organization reports, on a quarterly basis, the dollar value of such loans to its board of directors.
 18. Find out whether the organization has purchased insurance products to help mitigate the credit risks of its HLTV residential loans. If a policy has a coverage limit, determine whether the coverage may be exhausted before all loans in the pool mature or pay off.
 19. Determine whether the organization's credit-risk management function oversees the support function(s). Evaluate the effectiveness of controls and procedures over

staff persons responsible who are responsible for perfecting liens, collecting outstanding loan documents, obtaining insurance coverage (including flood insurance), and paying property taxes.

20. Determine whether policies and procedures have been established for home equity problem-loan workouts and loss-mitigation strategies.

Loan Participations, the Agreements and Participants

These inspection procedures are designed to ensure that originated loans that were transferred via loan participation agreements or certificates to state member banks, bank holding companies, nonbank affiliates, or other third parties were carefully evaluated. The procedures instruct examiners to determine if the asset transfers were carried out to avoid or circumvent classification and to determine the effect of the transfers on the BHC's financial condition or that of its subsidiaries. In addition, the procedures are designed to ensure that the primary regulator of another financial institution involved in the asset transfer of any low-quality assets is notified.

1. Review the board of directors' or their designated committees' policies and procedures governing how loan participation agreements and activities are created, transacted, and administered. Refer to section 2010.2.7 for the minimum items that should be included in board-approved policies on loan participation activities.
2. Determine if managerial reports provide sufficient information relative to the size and risk profile of the loan participation portfolio and evaluate the accuracy and timeliness of reports produced for the board and senior management.
3. For loan participations held (either in whole or in part) with another lending institution, review, if applicable,
 - the participation certificates and agreements, on a test basis, to determine if the contractual terms are being adhered to;
 - loan documentation to determine if it meets the BHC's (or its subsidiary's) underwriting procedures (that is, the documentation for loan participations should meet the same standards as the

documentation for other loans the respective entity originates);

- the transfer of loans immediately before the date of the inspection to determine if the loan was either nonperforming or classified and if the transfer was made to avoid possible criticism during the current inspection; and
 - losses to determine if they are shared on a pro rata or other basis according to the terms of the participation agreement.
4. Check participation certificates or agreements and records to determine whether the parties share in the risks and contractual payments on a pro rata or other basis.
 5. Determine if loans are purchased on a recourse basis and that loans are sold on a nonrecourse basis.
 6. Ascertain that the BHC (or its subsidiaries) do not buy back or pay interest on defaulted loans in contradiction of the underlying participation agreement.
 7. Compare the volume of outstanding originated or purchased loans that were issued in the form of loan participations with the total outstanding loan portfolio.
 8. Determine if the BHC (or its subsidiaries) has sufficient expertise to properly evaluate the volume of loans originated or purchased and sold as loan participations.
 9. Based on the terms of the loan participation agreements, review the originator's distribution of the borrower's payments received to those entities or persons owning interests in the loan participations. Ascertain if the agreement's recourse provisions may require accounting for the transactions as a secured borrowing rather than as a sale.
 10. Determine if loans are sold primarily to accommodate credit overline needs of customers or to generate fee income.
 11. Determine if loans are purchased or sold to affiliates or other companies; if so, determine whether the purchasing companies request and are given sufficient information to properly evaluate the credit. (Section 23A of the Federal Reserve Act and the Board's Regulation W prohibit transfers of low-quality assets between affiliates.) See sections 2020.0, 2020.1, 2020.2.
 12. Investigate any situations in which assets were transferred before the date of inspection:
 - a. Determine if any were transferred to avoid possible criticism during the inspection.
 - b. Determine whether any of the loan participations transferred were nonperform-

- ing at the time of transfer, classified during the previous examination, or transferred for any other reason that may cause the loans to be considered of questionable quality.
13. Review the BHC's policies and procedures to determine whether loan participations purchased are required to be given an independent, complete, and adequate credit evaluation. Review asset participations sold to affiliates to determine if the asset purchases were supported by an *arm's-length* and *independent* credit evaluation.
 14. Determine that any assets purchased by the BHC (or its subsidiaries) were properly recorded at fair market value at the time of purchase.
 15. Determine that transactions involving transfers of low-quality assets to the parent holding company or a nonbank affiliate are properly reflected at fair market value on the books of both the bank and the holding company affiliate.
 16. If poor-quality assets were transferred by the BHC to another financial institution for which the Federal Reserve is not the primary regulator, prepare a memorandum to be submitted to the Reserve Bank supervisory personnel. The Reserve Bank's appropriate staff will then inform the local office of the primary federal regulator of the other institution involved in the transfer. The memorandum should include the following information, as applicable,
 - names of originating and receiving institutions;
 - type of assets involved;
 - date (or dates) of transfer;
 - total number and dollar amount of assets transferred;
 - status of the assets when transferred (e.g., nonperforming, classified, etc.); and
 - any other information that would be helpful to the other regulator. Ascertain whether the bank manages not only the risk from individual participation loans but also portfolio risk.
 17. Find out if management develops appropriate strategies for managing concentration levels, including the development of a contingency plan to reduce or mitigate concentrations during adverse market conditions (such a plan may include strategies involving not only loan participations, but also whole loan sales). Find out if the BHC's (or its subsidiaries') contingency plan includes selling loans as loan participations.
 18. Ascertain if management periodically assesses the marketability of its loan participation portfolio and evaluates the BHC's (or its subsidiaries') ability to access the secondary market.
 19. Verify whether the BHC (or its subsidiaries) compare its underwriting standards for loan participations with those that exist in the secondary market.

2010.2.10 INTERNAL CONTROL QUESTIONNAIRE

Applicability/Risk-Management Framework

1. Has the institution adopted a risk-management framework around leveraged lending that includes:
 - a. A leveraged lending policy that is based on risk objectives, risk acceptance criteria, and risk controls?
 - b. Structuring transactions that reflect a sound business premise, have an appropriate capital structure, reasonable cash flow, and balance sheet leverage?
 - c. A definition of leveraged lending that can be applied across all business lines?
 - d. Well-defined underwriting standards that define acceptable leverage levels and amortization expectations?
 - e. A limit framework?
 - f. Sound MIS?
 - g. Pipeline management procedures, hold limits, and expected timing for distributions?
 - h. Guidelines for stress testing?
2. Is the institution able to identify leveraged exposures to related borrowers or guarantors?
3. Is the institution able to identify leveraged loans that are managed in non-lending portfolios (for example collateralized loan obligations (CLOs), special purpose entities (SPEs), or other indirect exposures)?
4. Is the institution originating leveraged loans; participating in leveraged loans, or both?

Definition of Leveraged Lending

1. Has the institution developed an appropriate written definition for leveraged lending and incorporated it into the leveraged lending

ing policy?

2. Is the policy definition consistent with the amounts and types of leveraged loans that the institution is engaged in?

General Policy Expectations

1. Has the institution's leveraged lending policy been approved by the board of directors?
2. Does the leveraged lending policy contain the following elements:
 - a. A clear statement of the amounts of leveraged lending that it is willing to underwrite and the amount(s) it is willing to hold in its own portfolio?
 - b. A limit framework that establishes limits or guidelines around the following as applicable:
 - 1) Single obligors and transactions?
 - 2) Aggregate hold portfolio?
 - 3) Total pipeline exposure?
 - 4) Industry and geographic concentration?
 - 5) Notional pipeline limits?
 - 6) Stress losses, flex terms, economic capital usage, and earnings at risk?
 - 7) Other parameters particular to the portfolio?
 - 8) The required management approval authorities and exception tracking provisions?
 - c. Procedures for insuring that leveraged lending risks are appropriately reflected in the institution's level of allowance for loan and lease losses (ALLL) and capital adequacy analysis?
 - d. Credit and underwriting approval authorities, including the procedures for approving and documenting changes to approved transaction structures and terms?
 - e. Guidelines for appropriate oversight by senior management, including adequate and timely reporting to the board of directors?
 - f. Expected risk-adjusted returns for leveraged transactions?
 - g. Minimum underwriting standards and underwriting practices for primary loan origination and secondary loan acquisition?

Participations Purchased

1. Has the institution, with respect to participations purchased, done its own independent underwriting of its portion of the transaction and has it adequately identified its risks?
2. Has the institution received copies of all documentation relevant to the transaction?
3. Is there evidence that the institution has reviewed the participation agreement and has a clear understanding of its rights and responsibilities under the agreement?

Underwriting Standards

1. Is the institution using similar underwriting standards for leveraged loans it plans to hold as well as for leveraged loans it plans to distribute?
2. Are the institution's underwriting standards clear, written, and measurable?
3. Do underwriting standards require:
 - A sound business premise for each transaction and that the borrower's capital structure is sustainable?
 - A determination and documentation of the borrower's capacity to repay and ability to de-lever to a sustainable level over a reasonable period?
 - Standards for evaluating various types of collateral?
 - Standards for evaluating risk-adjusted returns?
 - The acceptable degree of reliance on enterprise value and other intangible assets for loan repayment?
 - Expectations for the degree of support expected to be provided by sponsors?
 - A prohibition on material dilution, sale, or exchange of collateral or cash flow producing assets without lender approval?
 - A credit agreement that contains financial covenants, reporting covenants, and compliance monitoring? Does the loan contain covenant-lite and PIK toggle loan structures? If so, does the borrower have the ability to repay the loan under the contractual terms?
 - Guidelines for acceptable collateral types, loan-to value-guidelines, and acceptable collateral valuation methodologies?
 - Loan agreements that provide for the distribution of financial information to participants and investors?

Valuation Standards

1. Does the institution have policies for valuing illiquid, intangible, or hard to value collateral that include appropriate LTV ratios, discount rates, and collateral margins?
2. Is the institution relying on enterprise value to confirm a secondary source of repayment?
 - a. Has the institution documented its valuation approach to calculating enterprise value?
 - b. Has the valuation been performed by qualified persons independent of the origination function?
 - c. Has one or a combination of three methods been used for determining enterprise value, asset valuation, income valuation, or market valuation?
 - d. If the income method is used, is it based on capitalized cash flow or discounted cash flow?
 - e. Has the institution confirmed proxy measures such as multiples of cash flow earnings or sales by performing its own discounted cash flow analysis?
 - f. Are stress tests of key variables and assumptions used in determining enterprise value (such as cash flow earnings and sales multiples) conducted at origination and periodically thereafter?
 - g. Does the institution have established limits for the proportion of individual transactions and the total portfolio that are supported by enterprise value?

Pipeline Management

1. Do strong risk-management controls cover all transactions in the pipeline, including amounts planned for hold and those marked for distribution?
2. Does the institution have the capability to differentiate transactions based on their key characteristics, tenor, and investor class (pro-rata and institutional), structure, and key borrower characteristics (for example, industry)?
3. Does the institution have the following controls for pipeline exposure:
 - A documented appetite for underwriting pipeline risk that considers the potential effects on earnings, capital, and liquidity?
 - Written policies and procedures for “hung deals” or deals that are not sold

down within a reasonable or 90-day period?

- Have transactions reclassified as hold-to-maturity been reported to management and the board of directors?
- Guidelines for conducting periodic stress tests of pipeline exposures?
- Controls to monitor expected vs. actual performance?
- Reports that show individual and aggregate transaction information, risk ratings and concentrations?
- Limits on hold levels per borrower, counterparty, and aggregate hold levels?
- Limits on the amounts intended for distribution?
- Policies and procedures for acceptable accounting methods, including prompt recognition of losses?
- Policies and procedures around acceptable hedging practices if applicable?
- Plans to address contingent liabilities and compliance with Sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act and Regulation W?

Reporting and Analytics

1. Does management receive quarterly comprehensive reports about the characteristics and trends of the institution’s leveraged lending portfolio? Are summaries provided to the board of directors?
2. Do internal policies identify the data fields to be populated and captured by the institution’s MIS? Are the reports accurate and timely?
3. As dictated by the size and complexity of the leveraged lending portfolio, does MIS reporting on the leveraged lending portfolio include the following:
 - a. Individual and portfolio exposures within and across all business lines and legal vehicles including the pipeline?
 - b. Risk-rating distribution and migration analysis?
 - c. A list of borrowers who have been removed from the leveraged-lending portfolio due to improvements in their financial characteristics and risk profile? Is the removal from the profile concurrent with a refinance, restructure or some other modification in the loan agreement?

- d. Industry mix and maturity profile?
- e. Metrics derived from probability of default and loss-given default?
- f. Portfolio performance measures including covenant breaches, restructurings, delinquencies, nonperforming asset amounts, and charge offs?
- g. Amount and nature of impaired assets and the amount of ALLL attributable to leveraged lending?
- h. The level of policy exceptions in the portfolio?
- i. Exposures by collateral type, including unsecured transactions when enterprise values will be the only source of repayment?
- j. Defaults that trigger *pari-passu* treatment for all lenders?
- k. Secondary market pricing data and trading volume (when available)?
- l. An aggregation of exposures by and performance of deal sponsors?
- m. An indication of gross and net exposures, hedge and counterparty concentrations; and indication of policy exceptions?
- n. Actual vs. projected distribution levels of the pipeline with reports of excess levels of exposure over hold targets?
- o. *Types of exposure in the pipeline*: committed exposures not accepted by the borrower; exposures committed and accepted but not closed; funded and unfunded commitments closed but not distributed?
- p. *Total and segmented exposures*: subordinated debt and equity holdings (compared to limits); global exposures; indirect exposure (to an obligor or if the institution is holding a previously sold position as collateral or as a reference asset in a derivative)?
- q. Exposures booked in other business units throughout the institution that are related to a leveraged loan or borrower? (For example, default swaps or total return swaps naming the distributed paper as a covered or referenced asset or as collateral exposure through repo transactions).
- r. Positions held in leveraged loans in available for sale or traded portfolios or held in structured-investment vehicles owned or operated by the originating institution or its subsidiaries or affiliates?

Internal Risk Rating

1. Does the institution have evidence of adequate repayment capacity? For example, do borrowers demonstrate the ability to fully amortize senior debt or repay at least 50 percent of total debt over a five to seven-year period?
2. Are there extensions or other restructuring that are masking an inability to repay?
3. Has the primary source of repayment become inadequate? Is enterprise value being relied on as a secondary source of repayment? Is enterprise value well supported with binding purchase and sale agreements with qualified third parties? Does enterprise value consider the borrower's distressed circumstances?

Credit Analysis

1. Does transaction testing of individual leveraged lending credits contain the following elements and show that :
 - a. *Cash flow analysis*—The analysis does not rely on overly optimistic or unsubstantiated projections of sales, margins, or merger and acquisition synergies?
 - b. *Liquidity analysis*—There are measures to determine operating cash needs and cash needed to meet debt maturities? Analyze liquidity based on industry performance metrics?
 - c. *Projections*—There is adequate margin for unanticipated merger-related integration costs?
 - d. *Stress tests*—Projections are stress tested for one or more downside scenarios, including a covenant breach?
 - e. *Variances from plan*—Transactions are reviewed at least quarterly to determine variance from plan; does the credit file contain a chronological rationale for and analysis of all changes to the operating plan and variances from the expected financial performance?
 - f. *Enterprise Value*—Were enterprise values independently derived and validated outside of the origination function? Were values calculated timely and did they consider value erosion?
 - g. *Collateral shortfalls*—Have shortfalls been identified and factored into the risk rating?
 - h. *Collateral liquidation and asset sales*—Are any liquidations and sales based on current market conditions and trends?

- i. *Contingency plans*—Are there contingency analyses to anticipate changing conditions in debt or equity markets? Do the exposures rely on refinancing or the issuance of new equity?
- j. *Interest Rate Risk and Foreign Exchange Risk*—Have these risks been addressed in the analysis? Are mitigants in place?

Problem Credit Management

1. Has the institution formulated and established procedures for dealing with problem credits?
2. Do work out plans contain quantifiable objectives and measurable time frames?
3. Are problem credits regularly reviewed for risk-rating accuracy, accrual status, recognition of impairment through specific allocations and charge-offs.

Deal Sponsors

1. Has the institution developed guidelines for evaluating the willingness and ability of sponsors to support the credit exposure and a process to regularly monitor sponsor performance?
2. Determine if the credit analysis has considered:
 - a. If the sponsor is relied on as a secondary source of repayment and not a primary source of repayment?
 - b. If the sponsor has a historical pattern of supporting investments, financially or otherwise?
 - c. If the degree of support has been documented via a guarantee, comfort level, or verbal assurance?
 - d. If there has been a periodic review of the sponsor's financial statements, an analysis of liquidity, and an analysis of the sponsor's ability to support multiple deals?
 - e. If consideration has been given to the sponsor's dividend and capital contribution practices and the likelihood that the sponsor will support the borrower as compared to other deals in the sponsor's portfolio?

Credit Review

1. Does the institution conduct an internal credit review of the leveraged-lending port-

folio regularly, but at least once per year?

2. Does the institution ensure that credit review personnel have the knowledge and ability to identify risks in the leveraged lending portfolio?

Stress Testing

1. Has the institution developed and implemented guidelines for conducting periodic portfolio stress tests on loans originated to hold and on loans originated to distribute?
2. Has the institution conducted periodic loan and leveraged lending portfolio level stress tests?
3. If applicable, has the leveraged-lending portfolio been included in enterprise wide stress tests?
4. Does stress testing of leveraged credits include sensitivity analyses to quantify the potential impact of changing economic and market conditions on the institution's asset quality, earnings, liquidity, and capital?

Reputational Risk

1. Does the institution have procedures, safeguards, actions, training, and staff reminders about the potential reputational risk associated with poorly underwritten originated leveraged loans?
2. Has there been any failure or apparent failure by the institution to meet its legal responsibilities in underwriting and distributing transactions that could damage its reputation or its ability to compete?

Conflicts of Interest

1. Has the institution developed appropriate policies and procedures to address and to prevent potential conflicts of interest when it has both equity and lending positions?
2. Do policies and procedures:
 - a. Clearly define potential conflicts of interest?
 - b. Identify appropriate risk-management controls and procedures?
 - c. Enable employees to report potential conflicts of interest to managements without fear of retribution?
 - d. Ensure compliance with applicable laws?

3. Has management:
 - a. Established a training program for employees on appropriate practices to follow to avoid conflicts of interest?
 - b. Provided for reporting, tracking, and resolution of any conflicts?

Compliance

1. Does the institution maintain an independent compliance review function to periodically review its leveraged-lending activity?
2. Do the institution's policies include safeguards to prevent violations of anti-tying regulations?
3. How does the institution ensure compliance with applicable securities laws, including disclosure and other regulatory requirements when equity interests and certain debt instruments have been used in leveraged transactions that may constitute "securities" under federal securities laws?
4. Have plans and provisions been developed to ensure compliance with sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act and Regulation W?

2010.2.11 APPENDIX I - EXAMINER LOAN-SAMPLING REQUIREMENTS FOR CREDIT-EXTENDING NONBANK SUBSIDIARIES OF BHCS WITH \$10-50 BILLION IN TOTAL CONSOLIDATED ASSETS

This guidance sets forth loan sampling expectations for the Federal Reserve's examination of state member bank (SMB) and the inspection of credit-extending nonbank subsidiaries of bank holding companies (BHCs) with \$10-50 billion in total consolidated assets. Examiners will have the flexibility, depending upon the structure and size of subsidiary SMBs or credit-extending nonbank subsidiaries of BHCs, to utilize the guidance applicable to smaller organizations when the subsidiary's total assets are below \$10 billion. This guidance clarifies expectations for the assessment of material³⁷ retail credit portfolios for these institutions. The guidance that follows has been solely adapted to BHC credit-extending nonbank subsidiaries.

37. A loan portfolio or portfolio segment is considered material when the portfolio or segment exceeds 25 percent of total risk-based capital (tier 1 capital plus the allowance for loan and lease losses) or contributes 25 percent or more to annual revenues.

A thorough review of a BHC's credit-extending nonbank subsidiary's loan and lease portfolio remains a fundamental element of the Federal Reserve's inspection program for these organizations. Such credit reviews are a primary means for examiners to (1) evaluate the effectiveness of a BHC's credit-extending nonbank internal loan review program and internal grading systems for determining the reliability of internal reporting of classified credits, (2) assess compliance with applicable guidance and regulations, and (3) determine the efficacy of credit-risk management and credit administration processes. Further, examiners use the findings from their credit review to identify the overall thematic credit-risk management issues, to assess asset quality, to assist in the assessment of the adequacy of the allowance for loan and lease losses (ALLL), and to inform their analysis of capital adequacy.

2010.2.11.1 Loan Sampling Methodology

Reserve Banks will establish the annual loan-sampling objective during the supervisory planning process. The annual sampling objective should provide coverage of material exposures, including those in the retail segments.³⁸ Reserve Banks should plan on conducting at least two loan quality reviews during the annual supervisory cycle of the BHC's credit-extending nonbank subsidiaries with \$10–50 billion in total consolidated assets.

Each review should focus on one or more material commercial loan segment exposures using the comparable FR Y-9C Report loan types and, in total over the annual cycle, should cover the four highest concentrations for commercial credits in terms of total risk-based capital for any FR Y-9C Report loan type from Schedule HC-C. Loan segments that generate substantial revenues are generally likely to entail higher risk. To the extent that examiners can determine that a loan category contributes 25 percent or more to annual revenues,³⁹ examiners should sample these segments. Examiners

38. Commercial loan segments include commercial and industrial (C&I) loans, 1-4 family construction, other construction loans, multifamily loans, farm loans, non-farm non-residential owner occupied, and non-farm non-residential other loans. Retail loan segments include first lien mortgages, closed-end junior liens, home equity lines of credit (HELOCs), credit cards, automobile loans, and other consumer loans.

39. The 25 percent threshold should be based on internal MIS and may not be applicable or available in all instances. For the purposes of this guidance, annual revenue equals net interest income plus non interest income.

should also sample other loan segments that they or the bank's internal loan review have identified as exhibiting high-risk characteristics. Such risk characteristics include liberal underwriting, high levels of policy exceptions, high-delinquency trends, rapid growth, new lending products, concentrations and concentrations to industry, or significant levels of classified credits. In addition to these risk-focused samples, a sample of loans to insiders must be reviewed.⁴⁰ Annual loan sampling coverage by examiners should take into consideration the severity of the asset quality component rating, the effectiveness of the internal loan review program, the results of internal loan portfolio stress testing, and current asset quality financial trends.

During the inspection scoping phase, Reserve Bank staff should analyze the results of recent loan review reports or audits prepared for an institution's internal use and the Reserve Bank's most current assessment of credit-risk management to help establish the size and composition of loans to be selected for review. A nonbank subsidiary's internal loan review program should achieve substantial coverage beyond the examiners' annual judgmental sample of material loan portfolios. Examiners should review the findings and recommendations of the nonbank subsidiary's internal loan review program to help identify areas of risk. In selecting loans from each segment of the loan portfolio to review, examiners should include a selection of the largest loans, problem loans (past due 90 days or more, nonaccrual, restructured, or internally classified loans), and newly originated loans. Examiners should ensure the sample selection includes robust coverage of classified credits. At a minimum, loans selected for review from commercial loan segments should represent 10 percent of the committed dollar amount of credit exposure within the loan segment.

Sample sizes should be increased beyond the 10 percent minimum, based on examiner judgment, for segments when the inspection scoping process or the internal loan review program has identified

1. deficiencies with credit-risk management and administration practices,
2. unusually high loan growth,
3. credit quality or collateral values that have been adversely affected since the prior review by volatile local or national economic conditions, or

4. unreliable internal credit-risk grading.

Conversely, sample sizes should be based on the 10 percent minimum if

1. previous inspections concluded that internal loan review and credit-risk identification is effective,
2. internal loan review has reviewed a loan segment within the last 12 months and noted no material weaknesses, and
3. the inspection scoping process reveals no significant credit-risk management issues.

In general, the lower range of 10 percent sampling of each segment or the entire commercial portfolio would be acceptable when all aspects of credit risk indicate low and stable risk.

Examiners should determine classification amounts for retail credits using the Uniform Retail Classification Guidance (SR letter 00-8, "Revised Uniform Retail Credit Classification and Account Management Policy"). Annually, examiners should focus on one or more material retail loan segment exposures as divided by the comparable FR Y-9C Report loan type. Examiners should determine the appropriate sample of retail loans from material segments based on risk to be tested for compliance with internal credit administration policies and underwriting standards. While there is no minimum coverage expectation for retail portfolios or segments, the goal of sampling is to assist examiners in making an informed assessment of all aspects of retail credit-risk management. If applicable, examiners should evaluate and test secondary market origination and servicing practices and quality assurance programs. Examiners should also sample other retail loan segments, as needed, from segments the examiners or internal loan review identify as exhibiting high-risk characteristics such as liberal underwriting, high-delinquency trends, rapid growth, new lending products, or significant levels of classified credits.

2010.2.11.2 Documentation of Loan Sampling Analysis and Methodology

Examiners should discuss their analysis and objectives for achieving loan sampling coverage with Board staff during the annual supervisory planning process. Upon reaching a consensus with Board staff, the analysis and methodology

40. Federal Reserve examiners must test and evaluate Regulation O compliance annually.

should be retained in workpapers and documented in the supervisory plan. Further, examiners should document their loan sample selection methods in scoping memoranda and in the confidential section of the report of inspection. The required workpaper documentation of the commercial loan coverage calculation should be based on total loan commitments and should generally exclude loans reviewed outside of the Reserve Bank’s supervisory plan when a detailed analysis of the loans by an examiner and an assessment of credit-risk management were not performed. Review of syndicated loans and participations, such as those from the Shared National Credits (SNCs) annual review, should only be included in the coverage ratio if Reserve Bank staff reviewed the credit-risk management aspects of the credit (for example, adherence to underwriting policies) and these findings are included in the examiner’s assessment of overall credit-risk management practices. Examiners should continue to follow the SNC grading guidance.⁴¹

2010.2.11.3 Follow-Up Expectations for Inspections with Adverse Findings

Examiners should generally consider a credit-extending nonbank subsidiary’s internal risk-rating system to be less reliable when examiner downgrades⁴² or internal loan review downgrades equal 10 percent of the total number of loans reviewed, or 5 percent of the total dollar amount of loans and commitments reviewed. When a credit-extending nonbank subsidiary’s risk-rating system is determined to be unreliable, examiners may need to expand sampling to better evaluate the effect of rating differences on the entity’s ALLL and capital. In such situations, examiners should direct the BHC and its credit-extending nonbank subsidiary to take corrective action to validate its internal ratings and to evaluate whether the ALLL or capital should be increased. The Reserve Bank will follow-up with the BHC and its nonbank subsidiary to assess progress on corrective action and verify satisfactory completion. The timeframe for follow-up should correspond with the timeframe during which actions are to be completed.⁴³ All follow-up actions on adverse findings should be discussed with Board staff.

41. Refer to SR-77-377, “Shared National Credit Program.”

42. A credit-risk grading difference is considered a downgrade when (a) a risk rating is changed by the examiner from an internal Pass rating to a classified category or (b) a risk rating is changed by the examiner within the classified categories.

43. Refer to SR-13-13/CA -13-10, “Supervisory Considerations for the Communications of Supervisory Findings.”

The System's ability to evaluate the effectiveness of a company's supervision and control of subsidiary investment activities can be strengthened not only by evaluating the parent's role in light of efficiency and operating performance, but also by evaluating the quality of control and supervision. In order to assess quality there must be a standard or measuring block against which a company's policies can be evaluated. By establishing the minimum areas that a company's policies should address with respect to subsidiary investments, a standard is created which can evaluate the quality of company's control and supervision of that activity. The examiner needs to make a qualitative assessment of the parent's supervision and control of subsidiary investment activities.

2010.3.1 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. Determine if the parent's investment policy is adequate for the organization.
2. Determine if the investment policy is being complied with.

2010.3.2 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Determine whether the management has developed a flow chart on investment authorization procedures sufficiently detailed to assure that the execution of transactions precludes the ability to circumvent policy directives.
2. Determine whether all investment policies appear to be adequately tailored to fit the business needs of each subsidiary. Review the

methods and/or process through which prior approval of new activities and investments in new instruments is granted.

3. Determine whether the boards of directors and the management of subsidiaries appear to be sufficiently involved in their respective roles to assure that the performance of fiduciary responsibilities of each appears adequate.

4. Assess the adequacy of the level of management expertise in relation to its involvement in various investment activities.

5. Evaluate the reasonableness of investment activity initiated to achieve corporate objectives in light of its potential impact on the risk exposure of subsidiaries.

6. Assess the adequacy of investment policy directives in regard to the required maintenance of adequate recordkeeping systems at subsidiaries.

7. Evaluate policy directives regarding the appropriateness of accounting practices in regard to transactions involving investment participations, swaps, other transfers of investments as well as specialized investment activities.

8. Evaluate whether investment policies adequately provide for the maintenance of a stable income stream at bank subsidiaries as well as the parent company level.

9. Determine whether investment policy directives adequately address statutory limitations, particularly those involving intercompany transactions.

10. Evaluate the effectiveness of the bank holding company's audit function in assuring that investment policies and directives are adhered to at each corporate level.

This section emphasizes the importance of integrating subsidiaries into a consolidated plan, the essential elements of the planning process, and the ultimate accountability of the board of directors of the holding company. As a minimum, the parent's consolidated plan should include the following ten elements:

1. *All plans should address a long-range goal or focus, intermediate term objectives, and short-term budgets.* A long-range focus is particularly important during a changing environment and during expansions of the organization. Long-range plans generally are broad with a service or customer orientation and market share emphasis. These plans provide the entire organization with a consistent direction and facilitate changes in the organization arising from environmental changes. Intermediate goals generally are narrower in scope. Short-term budgets are generally developed at the subsidiary level; however, they are subject to review and revision by the parent in an effort to maintain consistency throughout the organization.

2. *The planning process should be formalized.* A long-range focus, intermediate term objectives, and budgets should be written and adopted by the parent's board of directors to insure centralized accountability.

3. *Plans should be consistent and interrelated over the differing time periods.* For example, budgets should be consistent with long-range goals—the implementation of a short-term, high return orientation may be inconsistent with a long-term goal of increasing market share, or short-term compensation plans may be dysfunctional in the long run.

4. *A consolidated plan should increase the consistency of goals among differing subsidiaries and the parent.* The long-range goals, intermediate term objectives, and short term goals and objectives should be periodically reviewed, preferably, annually, by the BHC's board of directors. A consolidated plan should reduce unnecessary internal competition.

5. *A consolidated plan should facilitate the allocation of resources throughout the organization.* This is particularly important when the parent is providing most, or all, of the short-term funds and long-term capital. As the parent has an awareness of all subsidiaries, it can better allocate funds and personnel to areas where they will be utilized most effectively.

6. *Plans should be formulated with an awareness to possible weaknesses and recognition to areas likely to be influenced by envi-*

ronmental change. For these areas, flexibility should exist for contingency plans.

7. *Methods should be determined, in the plan, to monitor and evaluate compliance with the plan.*

8. *The consolidated plan should have a measurable aspect to determine whether budgets, objectives, and goals are being met.* If they are not met, determination as to the controllability of variances should be ascertained.

9. *Plans and goals must continually be evaluated to determine whether accomplishing the goal results in the desired and expected outcome.* For example, the desired outcome may be to increase net income by granting loans with higher interest rates and above normal risk. The granting of such loans may result in a need to increase the provision for loan losses, thus causing a decrease in earnings.

10. *Plans should be flexible enough to remain effective in a volatile environment.* If plans are too rigid, they may become dysfunctional if the environment changes and actually constrain an organization's ability to react. On the other hand, flexible goals and plans should enhance an organization's ability to compete by providing the entire organization with a fluid consistent direction.

2010.4.1 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. To determine if the board of directors at the parent company is cognizant of and performing its duties and responsibilities.

2. To determine if the level of supervision over subsidiaries is both adequate and beneficial.

3. To evaluate the consolidated plan for consistency, controls, and effectiveness.

4. To ascertain if the board of directors of the parent company is making judgments and decisions based on adequate information flowing from the management and financial reporting systems of the organization.

2010.4.2 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Evaluate the participation by the board of directors of the parent company in giving overall direction to the organization.

2. Obtain and evaluate descriptions of all im-

portant management and financial policies, procedures, and practices.

3. Determine if contradictions or “conflicts” between expressed and unexpressed strategies and between long-term and short-term goals exist. Also determine that goals are consistent with concern over safety and soundness.

4. Determine whether the planning process is sufficiently flexible and if contingency plans exist.

5. Spell out the lines of authority associated with the planning process.

6. Determine the degree of control exercised by the parent company over the entire organization.

7. Test compliance with policies at all levels.

2010.5.1 BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON ENVIRONMENTAL LIABILITY

Banking organizations are increasingly becoming exposed to liability associated with the clean-up of hazardous substance contamination pursuant to, the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act (“CERCLA”), the federal superfund statute. It was enacted in response to the growing problem of improper handling and disposal of hazardous substances. CERCLA authorizes the Environmental Protection Agency (“EPA”) to clean-up hazardous waste sites and to recover costs associated with the clean-up from entities specified in the statute. The superfund statute is the primary federal law dealing with hazardous substance contamination. However, there are numerous other federal statutes, as well as state statutes, that establish environmental liability that could place banking organizations at risk. For example, underground storage tanks are also covered by separate federal legislation.¹

While the superfund statute was enacted a decade ago, it has been only since the mid-1980s that court actions have resulted in some banking organizations being held liable for the clean-up of hazardous substance contamination. In this connection, recent court decisions have had a wide array of interpretations as to whether banking organizations are owners or operators of contaminated facilities, and thereby liable under the superfund statute for clean-up costs. This has led to uncertainty on the part of banking organizations as to how to best protect themselves from environmental liability.

The relevant provisions of CERCLA, the so-called “superfund” statute, as it pertains to banking organizations, indicate which persons or entities are subject to liability for clean-up costs of hazardous substance contamination. These include “. . . the owner and operator of a vessel or a facility, (or) any person who at the time of disposal of any hazardous substance owned or operated any facility at which such hazardous substances were disposed of. . . .”² A person or entity that transports or arranges to transport hazardous substances can also be held liable for cleaning-up contamination under the superfund statute.

The liability imposed by the superfund statute is strict liability which means the government does not have to prove that the owners or operators had knowledge of or caused the hazardous substance contamination. Moreover, liability is joint and several, which allows the government to seek recovery of the entire cost of the clean-up from any individual party that is liable for those clean-up costs under CERCLA. In this connection, CERCLA does not limit the bringing of such actions to the EPA, but permits such actions to be brought by third parties.

CERCLA provides a secured creditor exemption in the definition of “owner and operator” by stating that these terms do not include “. . . a person, who, without participating in the management of a vessel or facility, holds indicia of ownership primarily to protect his security interest in the vessel or facility.”³ However, this exception has not provided banking organizations with an effective “safe harbor” because recent court decisions have worked to limit the application of this exemption. Specifically, courts have held that actions by lenders to protect their security interests may result in the banking organization “participating in the management” of a vessel or facility, thereby voiding the exemption. Additionally, once the title to a foreclosed property passes to the banking organization, courts have held that the exemption no longer applies and that the banking organization is liable under the superfund statute as an “owner” of the property. Under some circumstances, CERCLA may exempt landowners who acquire property without the knowledge of pre-existing conditions (the so-called “innocent landowner defense”). However, the courts have applied a stringent standard to qualify for this defense. Because little guidance is provided by the statute as to what constitutes the appropriate timing and degree of “due diligence” to successfully employ this defense, banking organizations should exercise caution before relying on it.

2010.5.2 OVERVIEW OF ENVIRONMENTAL HAZARDS

Environmental risk can be characterized as adverse consequences resulting from having gen-

1. Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1986 (RCRA).

2. CERCLA, Section 107(a).

3. CERCLA, Section 101(20)(A)..

erated or handled hazardous substances, or otherwise having been associated with the aftermath of subsequent contamination. The following discussion highlights some common environmental hazards, but by no means covers all environmental hazards.

Hazardous substance contamination is most often associated with industrial or manufacturing processes that involve chemicals or solvents in the manufacturing process or as waste products. For years, these types of hazardous substances were disposed of in land fills, or just dumped on industrial sites. Hazardous substances are also found in many other lines of business. The following examples demonstrate the diverse sources of potential hazardous substance contamination which should be of concern to banking organizations:

- Farmers and ranchers (use of fuel, fertilizers, herbicides, insecticides, and feedlot runoff).
- Dry cleaners (various cleaning solvents).
- Service station and convenience store operators (underground storage tanks).
- Fertilizer and chemical dealers and applicators (storage and transportation of chemicals).
- Lawn care businesses (application of lawn chemicals).
- Trucking firms (local and long haul transporters of hazardous substances such as fuel or chemicals).

The real estate industry has taken the brunt of the adverse affects of hazardous waste contamination. In addition to having land contaminated with toxic substances, construction methods for major construction projects, such as commercial buildings, have utilized materials that have been subsequently determined to be hazardous, resulting in significant declines in their value. For example, asbestos was commonly used in commercial construction from the 1950's to the late 1970's. Asbestos has since been found to be a health hazard and now must meet certain federal and, in many instances, state requirements for costly removal or abatement (enclosing or otherwise sealing off).

Another common source of hazardous substance contamination is underground storage tanks. Leaks in these tanks not only contaminate the surrounding ground, but often flow into ground water and travel far away from the original contamination site. As contamination spreads to other sites, clean-up costs escalate.

2010.5.3 IMPACT ON BANKING ORGANIZATIONS

Banking organizations may encounter losses arising from environmental liability in several ways. The greatest risk to banking organizations, resulting from the superfund statute and other environmental liability statutes, is the possibility of being held solely liable for costly environmental clean-ups such as hazardous substance contamination. If a banking organization is found to be a responsible party under CERCLA, the banking organization may find itself responsible for cleaning-up a contaminated site at a cost that far exceeds any outstanding loan balance. This risk of loss results from an interpretation of the superfund statute as providing for joint and several liability. Any responsible party, including the banking organization, could be forced to pay the full cost of any clean-up. Of course, the banking organization may attempt to recover such costs from the borrower, or the owner if different than the borrower, provided that the borrower or owner continues in existence and is solvent. Banking organizations may be held liable for the clean-up of hazardous substance contamination in situations where the banking organization:

- Takes title to property pursuant to foreclosure;
- Involves the banking organization's personnel or contractors engaged by the bank in day-to-day management of the facility;
- Takes actions designed to make the contaminated property salable, possibly resulting in further contamination;
- Acts in a fiduciary capacity, including management involvement in the day-to-day operations of industrial or commercial concerns, and purchasing or selling contaminated property;
- Owns existing, or acquires (by merger or acquisition), subsidiaries involved in activities that might result in a finding of environmental liability;
- Owns existing, or acquires for future expansion, premises that have been previously contaminated by hazardous substances. For example, site contamination at a branch office where a service station having underground storage tanks once operated. Also, premises or other real estate owned could be contaminated by asbestos requiring costly clean-up or abatement.

A more common situation encountered by banking organizations has been where real prop-

erty collateral is found to be contaminated by hazardous substances. The value of contaminated real property collateral can decline dramatically, depending on the degree of contamination. As the projected clean-up costs increase, the borrower may not be able to provide the necessary funds to remove contaminated materials. In making its determination whether to foreclose, the banking organization must estimate the potential clean-up costs. In many cases this estimated cost has been found to be well in excess of the outstanding loan balance, and the banking organization has elected to abandon its security interest in the property and write off the loan. This situation occurs regardless of the fact that the superfund statute provides a secured creditor exemption. Some courts have not extended this exemption to situations where banking organizations have taken title to a property pursuant to foreclosure. These rulings have been based on a strict reading of the statute that provides the exemption to “security interests” only.

Risk of credit losses can also arise where the credit quality of individual borrowers (operators, generators, or transporters of hazardous substances) deteriorates markedly as a result of being required to clean up hazardous substance contamination. Banking organizations must be aware that significant clean-up costs borne by the borrower could threaten the borrower’s solvency and jeopardize the banking organization’s ultimate collection of outstanding loans to that borrower, regardless of the fact that no real property collateral is involved. Therefore, ultimate collection of loans to fund operations, or to acquire manufacturing or transportation equipment can be jeopardized by the borrower’s generating or handling of hazardous substances in an improper manner. Further, some bankruptcy courts have required clean-up of hazardous substance contamination prior to distribution of a debtor’s estate to secured creditors.

Borrowers may have existing subsidiaries or may be involved in merger and acquisition activity that may place the borrower at risk for the activities of others that result in environmental liability. Some courts have held that for the purposes of determining liability under the superfund statute, the corporate veil may not protect parent companies that participate in the day-to-day operations of their subsidiaries from environmental liability and court imposed clean-up costs. Additionally, borrowers can be held liable for contamination which occurred prior to their owning or using real estate.

2010.5.4 PROTECTION AGAINST ENVIRONMENTAL LIABILITY

Banking organizations have numerous ways to identify and minimize their exposure to environmental liability. Because environmental liability is relatively recent, procedures used to safeguard against such liability are evolving. The following discussion briefly describes methods currently being employed by banking organizations and others to minimize potential environmental liability.

Banking organizations should have in place adequate safeguards and controls to limit their exposure to potential environmental liability. Loan policies and procedures should address methods for identifying potential environmental problems relating to credit requests as well as existing loans. The loan policy should describe an appropriate degree of due diligence investigation required for credit requests. Borrowers in high-risk industries or localities should be held to a more stringent due diligence investigation than borrowers in low-risk industries or localities. In addition to establishing procedures for granting credit, procedures should be developed and applied to portfolio analysis, credit monitoring, loan workout situations, and—prior to taking title to real property—foreclosures. Banking organizations may avoid or mitigate potential environmental liability by having sound policies and procedures designed to identify, assess and control environmental liability.

At the same time, banking organizations must be careful that any lending policies and procedures, but especially those undertaken to assess and control environmental liability, cannot be construed as taking an active role in participating in the management or day-to-day operations of the borrower’s business. Activities which could be considered active participation in the management of the borrower’s business, and therefore subject the bank to potential liability, include, but are not limited to:

- having bank employees as members of the borrower’s board of directors or actively participating in board decisions;
- assisting in day-to-day management and operating decisions; and
- actively determining management changes.

These considerations are especially important when the banking organization is actively involved in loan workouts or debt restructuring.

The first step in identifying and minimizing environmental risk is for banking organizations to perform environmental reviews. Such reviews may be performed by loan officers or others, and typically identify past practices and uses of the facility and property, evaluate regulatory compliance, if applicable, and identify potential future problems. This is accomplished by interviewing persons familiar with present and past uses of the facility and property, reviewing relevant records and documents, and visiting and inspecting the site.

Where the environmental review reveals possible hazardous substance contamination, an environmental assessment or audit may be required. Environmental assessments are made by personnel trained in identifying potential environmental hazards and provide a more thorough review and inspection of the facility and property. Environmental audits differ markedly from environmental assessments in that independent environmental engineers are employed to investigate, in greater detail, those factors listed previously, and actually test for hazardous substance contamination. Such testing might require collecting and analyzing air samples, surface soil samples, subsurface soil samples, or drilling wells to sample ground water.

Other measures used by some banking organizations to assist in identifying and minimizing environmental liability include: obtaining indemnities from borrowers for any clean-up costs incurred by the banking organization, and including affirmative covenants in loan agreements (and attendant default provisions) requiring the borrower to comply with all applicable environmental regulations. Although these measures may provide some aid in identifying and minimizing potential environmental liability, they are not a substitute for environmental reviews, assessments and audits, because their effectiveness is dependent upon the financial strength of the borrower.

2010.5.5 CONCLUSION

Potential environmental liability can touch on a great number of loans to borrowers in many industries or localities. Moreover, nonlending activities as well as corporate affiliations can lead to environmental liability depending upon the nature of the these activities and the degree of participation that the parent exercises in the operations of its subsidiaries. Such liability can

result in losses arising from hazardous substance contamination because banking organizations are held directly liable for costly court ordered clean-ups. Additionally, the banking organization's ability to collect the loans it makes may be hampered by significant declines in collateral value, or the inability of a borrower to meet debt payments after paying for costly clean-ups of hazardous substance contamination.

Banking organizations must understand the nature of environmental liability arising from hazardous substance contamination. Additionally, they should take prudential steps to identify and minimize their potential environmental liability. Indeed, the common threat to environmental liability is the existence of hazardous substances, not types of borrowers, lines of business, or real property.

2010.5.6 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. To determine whether adequate safeguards and controls have been established to limit exposure to potential environmental liability.

2. To determine whether the banking organization has identified specific credits and any lending and other banking and nonbanking activities that expose the organization to environmental liability.

2010.5.7 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Review loan policies and procedures and establish whether these and other adequate safeguards and controls have been established to avoid or mitigate potential environmental liability.⁴ In performing this task, ascertain whether:

- a. an environmental policy statement has been adopted;

- b. training programs are being conducted so that lending personnel are aware of environmental liability issues and are able to identify borrowers with potential problems;

- c. guidelines and procedures have been established for dealing with new borrowers and real property offered as collateral.

- d. the lending policies and procedures and other safeguards, including those to assess and control environmental liability, may not be construed as actively participating in the management of day-to-day operations of borrowers' businesses.

2. When reviewing individual credits determine whether the loan policy has been complied with in regard to a borrower's activities or industry that is associated with hazardous substances or environmental liability.

3. Ascertain whether appropriate periodic analysis of potential environmental liability is conducted.

Such analysis should be more rigorous as the risk of hazardous substance contamination increases. The following are examples of types of analyses and procedures that should be progressively considered as the risk of environmental liability increases:

- Environmental review—screening of the borrower's activities by lending personnel or real estate appraisers for potential environmental problems (using questionnaires, interviews, or observations).

Review procedures might include a survey of past ownership and uses of the property, a property inspection, a review of adjacent or contiguous parcels of property, a review of company records for past use or disposal of hazardous materials, and a review of any relevant Environmental Protection Agency records.

- Environmental assessment—structured analysis by a *qualified* individual that identifies the borrower's past practices, regulatory compliance, and potential future problems. This analysis would include reviewing relevant documents, visiting and inspecting the site, and, in some cases, performing limited tests.
- Environmental audit—a professional environmental engineer performs a similar

structured analysis as previously indicated for "environmental assessments," however, more comprehensive testing might involve collecting and analyzing air samples, surface soil samples, subsurface soil samples, or drilling wells to sample ground water.

4. Determine whether existing loans are reviewed internally to identify credits having potential environmental problems.

5. Review recordkeeping procedures and determine whether there is documentation as to the due diligence efforts taken at the time of making loans or acquiring real property.

6. Review loan agreements to determine if warranties, representations, and indemnifications have been included in loan agreements designed to protect the banking organization from losses stemming from hazardous substance contamination. (Although such provisions provide some protection for the lender, these agreements are not binding against the government or third parties. Such contractual protections are only as secure as the borrower's financial strength.)

7. For situations involving potential environmental liability arising from a banking organization's nonlending activities, verify that similar policies and procedures are in place.⁵

5. A banking organization's policies and procedures relating to environmental liability should apply to nonlending situations where appropriate. For example, banking organizations engaged in trust activities or contemplating a merger or acquisition should evaluate the possibility of existing or subsequent environmental liability arising from these activities.

Supervision of Subsidiaries (Financial Institution Subsidiary Retail Sales of Nondeposit Investment Products) Section 2010.6

WHAT'S NEW IN THIS REVISED SECTION

Effective July 2009, this section has been revised to delete a cancelled SR letter reference.

2010.6.05 INTERAGENCY STATEMENT OVERVIEW

The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, along with the other federal banking regulators, issued an interagency statement on February 15, 1994, that provides comprehensive guidance on retail sales of nondeposit investment products occurring on or from depository institution premises. The interagency statement unifies pronouncements previously issued by the banking agencies that addressed various aspects of retail sales programs involving mutual funds, annuities, and other nondeposit investment products.

The interagency statement applies to all depository institutions, including state member banks and the U.S. branches and agencies of foreign banks, supervised by the Federal Reserve. The policy statement does not apply directly to bank holding companies. However, the board of directors and management of bank holding companies should consider and administer the provisions of the statement with regard to the holding company's supervision of its banking and thrift subsidiaries that offer such products to retail customers. Reserve Bank examiners will continue to review nondeposit investment product sales activities during examinations of institutions engaging in such activities on their premises, either directly or through a third party or an affiliate. The review process will consist of, at a minimum, an assessment of whether the interagency statement is being followed, particularly with regard to the nature and sufficiency of an institution's disclosures, the separation of functions, and the training of personnel involved with the sales of mutual funds and other nondeposit products. (See SR-94-11.)

The interagency policy statement was further clarified by a September 12, 1995, joint interpretation (SR-95-46). Section numbers have been added for reference.

2010.6.1 INTERAGENCY STATEMENT ON RETAIL SALES OF NONDEPOSIT INVESTMENT PRODUCTS

Insured depository institutions have expanded their activities in recommending or selling such products. Many depository institutions are providing these services at the retail level, directly or through various types of arrangements with third parties.

Sales activities for nondeposit investment products should ensure that customers for these products are clearly and fully informed of the nature and risks associated with these products. In particular, where nondeposit investment products are recommended or sold to retail customers, depository institutions should ensure that customers are fully informed that the products—

- are not insured by the FDIC;
- are not deposits or other obligations of the institution and are not guaranteed by the institution; and
- are subject to investment risks, including possible loss of the principal invested.

Moreover, sales activities involving these investment products should be designed to minimize the possibility of customer confusion and to safeguard the institution from liability under the applicable antifraud provisions of the federal securities laws, which, among other things, prohibit materially misleading or inaccurate representations in connection with the sale of securities.

The four federal banking agencies—the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, and the Office of Thrift Supervision—issued the statement to provide uniform guidance to depository institutions engaging in these activities.¹

1. Each of the four banking agencies has in the past issued guidelines addressing various aspects of the retail sale of nondeposit investment products, which are superseded by this statement. Some of the banking agencies had adopted additional guidelines covering the sale of certain specific types of instruments by depository institutions, i.e., obligations of the institution itself or of an affiliate of the institution.

2010.6.1.1 Scope

This statement applies when retail recommendations or sales of nondeposit investment products are made by—

- employees of the depository institution;
- employees of a third party, which may or may not be affiliated with the institution,² occurring on the premises of the institution (including telephone sales or recommendations by employees or from the institution's premises and sales or recommendations initiated by mail from its premises); and
- sales resulting from a referral of retail customers by the institution to a third party when the depository institution receives a benefit for the referral.

Retail sales include (but are not limited to) sales to individuals by depository institution personnel or third-party personnel conducted in or adjacent to the institution's lobby area. Sales of government or municipal securities away from the lobby area are not subject to the interagency statement. The statement also applies to sales activities of an affiliated standalone broker-dealer resulting from a referral of retail customers from the depository institution to the broker-dealer.

These guidelines generally do not apply to the sale of nondeposit investment products to nonretail customers, such as sales to fiduciary accounts administered by an institution.³ The disclosures provided by the interagency statement, however, should be provided to customers of fiduciary accounts where the customer directs investments, such as self-directed IRA accounts. Such disclosures need not be made to customers

acting as professional money managers. Fiduciary accounts administered by an affiliated trust company on the depository institution's premises should be treated as fiduciary accounts of the institution. However, as part of its fiduciary responsibility, an institution should take appropriate steps to avoid potential customer confusion when providing nondeposit investment products to the institution's fiduciary customers.

2010.6.1.2 Adoption of Policies and Procedures

2010.6.1.2.1 Program Management

A depository institution involved in the activities described above for the sale of nondeposit investment products to its retail customers should adopt a written statement that addresses the risks associated with the sales program and contains a summary of policies and procedures outlining the features of the institution's program and addressing, at a minimum, the concerns described in this statement. The written statement should address the scope of activities of any third party involved as well as the procedures for monitoring compliance by third parties in accordance with the guidelines below. The scope and level of detail of the statement should appropriately reflect the level of the institution's involvement in the sale or recommendation of nondeposit investment products. The institution's statement should be adopted and reviewed periodically by its board of directors. Depository institutions are encouraged to consult with legal counsel with regard to the implementation of a nondeposit investment product sales program.

The institution's policies and procedures should include the following:

Compliance procedures. The procedures for ensuring compliance with applicable laws and regulations and consistency with the provisions of this statement.

Supervision of personnel involved in sales. A designation by senior managers of specific individuals to exercise supervisory responsibility for each activity outlined in the institution's policies and procedures.

Types of products sold. The criteria governing the selection and review of each type of product sold or recommended.

Permissible use of customer information. The procedures for the use of information regarding the institution's customers for any purpose in

2. This statement does not apply to the subsidiaries of insured state nonmember banks, which are subject to separate provisions, contained in 12 C.F.R. 337.4, relating to securities activities. For OTS-regulated institutions that conduct sales of nondeposit investment products through a subsidiary, these guidelines apply to the subsidiary. 12 C.F.R. 545.74 also applies to such sales. Branches and agencies of U.S. foreign banks should follow these guidelines with respect to their nondeposit investment sales programs.

3. Restrictions on a national bank's use as fiduciary of the bank's brokerage service or other entity with which the bank has a conflict of interest, including purchases of the bank's proprietary and other products, are set out in 12 C.F.R. 9.12. Similar restrictions on transactions between funds held by a federal savings association as fiduciary and any person or organization with whom there exists an interest that might affect the best judgment of the association acting in its fiduciary capacity are set out in 12 C.F.R. 550.10.

connection with the retail sale of nondeposit investment products.

Designation of employees to sell investment products. A description of the responsibilities of those personnel authorized to sell nondeposit investment products and of other personnel who may have contact with retail customers concerning the sales program, and a description of any appropriate and inappropriate referral activities and the training requirements and compensation arrangements for each class of personnel.

2010.6.1.2.2 Arrangements with Third Parties

If a depository institution directly or indirectly, including through a subsidiary or service corporation, engages in activities as described above under which a third party sells or recommends nondeposit investment products, the institution should, prior to entering into the arrangement, conduct an appropriate review of the third party. The institution should have a written agreement with the third party that is approved by the institution's board of directors. Compliance with the agreement should be periodically monitored by the institution's senior management. At a minimum, the written agreement should—

- describe the duties and responsibilities of each party, including a description of permissible activities by the third party on the institution's premises; terms as to the use of the institution's space, personnel, and equipment; and compensation arrangements for personnel of the institution and the third party;
- specify that the third party will comply with all applicable laws and regulations, and will act consistently with the provisions of this statement and, in particular, with the provisions relating to customer disclosures;
- authorize the institution to monitor the third party and periodically review and verify that the third party and its sales representatives are complying with its agreement with the institution;
- authorize the institution and the appropriate banking agency to have access to such records of the third party as are necessary or appropriate to evaluate such compliance;
- require the third party to indemnify the institution for potential liability resulting from actions of the third party with regard to the investment product sales program; and
- provide for written employment contracts, satisfactory to the institution, for personnel who

are employees of both the institution and the third party.

2010.6.1.3 General Guidelines

2010.6.1.3.1 Disclosures and Advertising

The banking agencies believe that recommending or selling nondeposit investment products to retail customers should occur in a manner that ensures that the products are clearly differentiated from insured deposits. Conspicuous and easy-to-comprehend disclosures concerning the nature of nondeposit investment products and the risk inherent in investing in these products are one of the most important ways of ensuring that the differences between nondeposit products and insured deposits are understood.

2010.6.1.3.1.1 Content and Form of Disclosure

Disclosures with respect to the sale or recommendation of these products should, at a minimum, specify that the product is—

- not insured by the FDIC;
- not a deposit or other obligation of, or guaranteed by, the depository institution; and
- subject to investment risks, including possible loss of the principal amount invested.

The written disclosures described above should be conspicuous and presented in a clear and concise manner. Depository institutions may provide any additional disclosures that further clarify the risks involved with particular nondeposit investment products.

2010.6.1.3.1.2 Timing of Disclosure

The minimum disclosures should be provided to the customer—

- orally during any sales presentation;
- orally when investment advice concerning nondeposit investment products is provided;
- orally and in writing prior to or at the time an investment account is opened to purchase these products; and
- in advertisements and other promotional materials, as described below.

A statement, signed by the customer, should be obtained at the time such an account is opened, acknowledging that the customer has received and understands the disclosures. Third-party vendors not affiliated with the depository institution need not make the minimum disclosures on confirmations and account statements that contain the name of the depository institution as long as the name of the depository institution is there only incidentally and with a valid business purpose, and as long as it is clear on the face of the document that the broker-dealer, and not the depository institution, has sold the nondeposit investment products. For investment accounts established prior to the issuance of these guidelines, the institution should consider obtaining such a signed statement at the time of the next transaction.

Confirmations and account statements for such products should contain at least the minimum disclosures if the confirmations or account statements contain the name or the logo of the depository institution or an affiliate.⁴ If a customer's periodic deposit account statement includes account information concerning the customer's nondeposit investment products, the information concerning these products should be clearly separate from the information concerning the deposit account and should be introduced with the minimum disclosures and the identity of the entity conducting the nondeposit transaction.

2010.6.1.3.1.3 Advertisements and Other Promotional Material

Advertisements and other promotional and sales material, written or otherwise, about nondeposit investment products sold to retail customers should conspicuously include at least the minimum disclosures discussed above and must not suggest or convey any inaccurate or misleading impression about the nature of the product or its lack of FDIC insurance. The minimum disclosures should also be emphasized in telemarketing contacts. A shorter version of the minimum disclosures is permitted in advertisements. The text of an acceptable logo-format disclosure would include the following statements:

- not FDIC-insured
- no bank guarantee
- may lose value

The logo format should be boxed, set in bold-face type, and displayed in a conspicuous manner. Radio broadcasts of 30 seconds or less, electronic signs, and signs, such as banners and posters, when used only as location indicators, need not contain the minimum disclosures. Any third-party advertising or promotional material should clearly identify the company selling the nondeposit investment product and should not suggest that the depository institution is the seller. If brochures, signs, or other written material contain information about both FDIC-insured deposits and nondeposit investment products, these materials should clearly segregate information about nondeposit investment products from the information about deposits.

2010.6.1.3.1.4 Additional Disclosures

Where applicable, the depository institution should disclose the existence of an advisory or other material relationship between the institution or an affiliate of the institution and an investment company whose shares are sold by the institution and any material relationship between the institution and an affiliate involved in providing nondeposit investment products. In addition, where applicable, the existence of any fees, penalties, or surrender charges should be disclosed. These additional disclosures should be made prior to or at the time an investment account is opened to purchase these products. If sales activities include any written or oral representations concerning insurance coverage provided by any entity other than the FDIC, e.g., the Securities Investor Protection Corporation (SIPC), a state insurance fund, or a private insurance company, then clear and accurate written or oral explanations of the coverage must also be provided to customers when the representations concerning insurance coverage are made, in order to minimize possible confusion with FDIC insurance. Such representations should not suggest or imply that any alternative insurance coverage is the same as or similar to FDIC insurance.

Because of the possibility of customer confusion, a nondeposit investment product must not have a name that is identical to the name of the depository institution. Recommending or selling a nondeposit investment product with a name similar to that of the depository institution should only occur pursuant to a sales program

4. These disclosures should be made in addition to any other confirmation disclosures that are required by law or regulation, e.g., 12 C.F.R. 12 and 344, and 12 C.F.R. 208.8(k)(3).

designed to minimize the risk of customer confusion. The institution should take appropriate steps to ensure that the issuer of the product has complied with any applicable requirements established by the Securities and Exchange Commission regarding the use of similar names.

2010.6.1.3.2 Setting and Circumstances

Selling or recommending nondeposit investment products on the premises of a depository institution may give the impression that the products are FDIC-insured or are obligations of the depository institution. To minimize customer confusion with deposit products, sales or recommendations of nondeposit investment products on the premises of a depository institution should be conducted in a physical location distinct from the area where retail deposits are taken. Signs or other means should be used to distinguish the investment sales area from the retail deposit-taking area of the institution. However, in the limited situation where physical considerations prevent sales of nondeposit products from being conducted in a distinct area, the institution has a heightened responsibility to ensure appropriate measures are in place to minimize customer confusion.

In no case, however, should tellers and other employees, while located in the routine deposit-taking area, such as the teller window, make general or specific investment recommendations regarding nondeposit investment products, qualify a customer as eligible to purchase such products, or accept orders for such products, even if unsolicited. Tellers and other employees who are not authorized to sell nondeposit investment products may refer customers to individuals who are specifically designated and trained to assist customers interested in the purchase of such products.

2010.6.1.3.3 Qualifications and Training

The depository institution should ensure that its personnel who are authorized to sell nondeposit investment products or to provide investment advice with respect to such products are adequately trained with regard to the specific products being sold or recommended. Training should not be limited to sales methods, but should impart a thorough knowledge of the products involved, of applicable legal restrictions, and of customer-protection requirements. If depository institution personnel sell or recom-

mend securities, the training should be the substantive equivalent of that required for personnel qualified to sell securities as registered representatives.⁵ Depository institution personnel with supervisory responsibilities should receive training appropriate to that position. Training should also be provided to employees of the depository institution who have direct contact with customers to ensure a basic understanding of the institution's sales activities and the policy of limiting the involvement of employees who are not authorized to sell investment products to customer referrals. Training should be updated periodically and should occur on an ongoing basis.

Depository institutions should investigate the backgrounds of employees hired for their nondeposit investment products sales programs, including checking for possible disciplinary actions by securities and other regulators if the employees have previous investment industry experience.

2010.6.1.3.4 Suitability and Sales Practices

Depository institution personnel involved in selling nondeposit investment products must adhere to fair and reasonable sales practices and be subject to effective management and compliance reviews with regard to such practices. In this regard, if depository institution personnel *recommend* nondeposit investment products to customers, they should have reasonable grounds for believing that the specific product recommended is suitable for the particular customer on the basis of information disclosed by the customer. Personnel should make reasonable efforts to obtain information directly from the customer regarding, at a minimum, the customer's financial and tax status, investment objectives, and other information that may be useful or reasonable in making investment recommendations to that customer. This information should be documented and updated periodically.

5. Savings associations are not exempt from the definitions of "broker" and "dealer" in sections 3(a)(4) and 3(a)(5) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; therefore, all securities sales personnel in savings associations must be registered representatives.

2010.6.1.3.5 Compensation

Depository institution employees, including tellers, may receive a one-time nominal fee of a fixed dollar amount for each customer referral for nondeposit investment products. The payment of this referral fee should not depend on whether the referral results in a transaction.

Personnel who are authorized to sell nondeposit investment products may receive incentive compensation, such as commissions, for transactions entered into by customers. However, incentive compensation programs must not be structured in such a way as to result in unsuitable recommendations or sales being made to customers.

Depository institution compliance and audit personnel should not receive incentive compensation directly related to results of the nondeposit investment sales program.

2010.6.1.3.6 Compliance

Depository institutions should develop and implement policies and procedures to ensure that nondeposit investment product sales activities are conducted in compliance with applicable laws and regulations, the institution's internal policies and procedures, and in a manner consistent with this statement. Compliance procedures should identify any potential conflicts of interest and how such conflicts should be addressed. The compliance procedures should also provide for a system to monitor customer complaints and their resolution. Where applicable, compliance procedures also should call for verification that third-party sales are being conducted in a manner consistent with the governing agreement with the depository institution.

The compliance function should be conducted independently of nondeposit investment product sales and management activities. Compliance personnel should determine the scope and frequency of their own review, and findings of compliance reviews should be periodically reported directly to the institution's board of directors, or to a designated committee of the board. Appropriate procedures for the nondeposit investment product program should also be incorporated into the institution's audit program.

2010.6.1.4 Supervision by Banking Agencies

The federal banking agencies will continue to review a depository institution's policies and procedures governing recommendations and sales of nondeposit investment products, as well as management's implementation and compliance with such policies and all other applicable requirements. The banking agencies will monitor compliance with the institution's policies and procedures by third parties that participate in the sale of these products. The failure of a depository institution to establish and observe appropriate policies and procedures consistent with this statement in connection with sales activities involving nondeposit investment products will be subject to criticism and appropriate corrective action.

2010.6.2 SUPPLEMENTARY FEDERAL RESERVE SUPERVISORY AND EXAMINATION GUIDANCE PERTAINING TO THE SALE OF UNINSURED NONDEPOSIT INVESTMENT PRODUCTS

The above guidelines contained in the Interagency Statement on Retail Sales of Nondeposit Investment Products apply to retail recommendations or sales of nondeposit investment products made by—

- employees of a banking organization,
- employees of an affiliated or unaffiliated third party occurring on the premises of the banking organization (including telephone sales, investment recommendations by employees, and sales or recommendations initiated by mail from its premises), and
- a referral of retail customers by the institution to a third party when the depository institution receives a benefit for the referral.

The following examination procedures are intended to determine if the bank's policies and procedures provide for an operating environment that is designed to ensure customer protections in all facets of the sales program. Furthermore, examiners are expected to assess the bank's ability to conduct such sales activities in a safe and sound manner.

These procedures apply when reviewing the nondeposit investment product retail sales activities conducted by state member banks or the state-licensed U.S. branches or agencies of foreign banks. They also apply to such activities

conducted by a bank holding company nonbank subsidiary on the premises of a bank.⁶

The Rules of Fair Practice of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (FINRA) govern sales of securities by its member broker-dealers. In addition, the federal securities laws prohibit materially misleading or inaccurate representations in connection with the offer or sale of securities⁷ and require that sales of registered securities be accompanied by a prospectus that complies with Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) disclosure requirements.

In view of the existence of these securities rules and laws that are applicable to broker-dealers subject to supervision by the SEC and the FINRA, examiners should note that the examination procedures contained herein have been tailored to avoid duplication of examination efforts by relying on the most recent examination results or sales-practice review conducted by the FINRA and provided to the third party. To the extent that no such FINRA examinations or reviews have been completed within the last two years, Reserve Banks should consult with Board staff to determine an appropriate examination/inspection scope before proceeding further.

Notwithstanding Reserve System use of FINRA results of sales-practice reviews, examiners should still complete the balance of these examination procedures, particularly those pertaining to the separation of sales of nondeposit investment products from the deposit-taking activities of the bank. Examiners should determine whether the institution has adequate policies and procedures to govern the conduct of the sales activities on a bank's premises and, in particular, whether sales of nondeposit investment products are distinguished from the deposit-taking activities of the bank through disclosure and physical means that are designed to prevent customer confusion.

Although the interagency statement does not apply to sales of nondeposit investment products to nonretail customers, such as fiduciary

customers, examiners should apply these examination procedures when retail customers are directed to the bank's trust department where they may purchase nondeposit investment products simply by completing a customer agreement.

For additional information on the subject of retail sales of nondeposit investment products, examiners and other interested parties may find it helpful to refer to "Retail Investment Sales—Guidelines for Banks," February 1994 (industry guidelines), published collectively by six bank trade associations and available from the American Bankers Association, 1120 Connecticut Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20036.

2010.6.2.1 Program Management

Banking organizations must adopt policies and procedures governing nondeposit investment product retail sales programs. Such policies and procedures should be in place before the commencement of the retail sale of nondeposit investment products on bank premises.

The board of directors of a banking organization is responsible for ensuring that retail sales of nondeposit investment products comply with the interagency statement (see section 2010.6.1) and all applicable state and federal laws and regulations. Therefore, the board or a designated committee of the board should adopt written policies that address the risks and management of such sales programs. Policies and procedures should reflect the size, complexity, and volume of the institution's activities or, when applicable, address the institution's arrangements with any third parties selling such products on bank premises. The banking organization's policies and procedures should be reviewed periodically by the board of directors or its designated committee to ensure that the policies are consistent with the institution's current practices, applicable laws, regulations, and guidelines.

As discussed in more detail below, an institution's policies and procedures for nondeposit investment products should, at a minimum, address disclosure and advertising, physical separation of investment sales from deposit-taking activities, compliance and audit, suitability, and other sales practices and related risks associated with such activities. In addition, policies and procedures should address the following areas.

6. The interagency statement and the majority of these examination procedures apply to all depository institutions. Many of the procedures, however, may not apply directly to the inspection of bank holding companies. Some procedures may be applicable to bank holding companies from the perspective of inspecting a bank holding company with regard to its responsibility to supervise its depository institution and holding company nonbank subsidiaries. Depository institution examination procedures and bank holding company inspection procedures have been included in this section to keep bank holding company examiners fully informed.

7. See, for example, section 10(b) of the Securities Exchange Act (15 U.S.C. 78j(b)) and rule 10b-5 (17 C.F.R. 240.10b-5) thereunder.

2010.6.2.1.1 Types of Products Sold

When evaluating nondeposit investment products, management should consider what products best meet the needs of customers. Policies should outline the criteria and procedures that will be used to select and periodically review nondeposit investment products that are recommended or sold on a depository institution's premises. Institutions should periodically review products offered to ensure that they meet their customers' needs.

2010.6.2.1.2 Use of Identical or Similar Names

Because of the possibility of customer confusion, a nondeposit investment product must not have a name that is identical to the name of a bank or its affiliates. However, a bank may sell a nondeposit investment product with a name similar to the bank's as long as the sales program addresses the even greater risk that customers may regard the product as an insured deposit or other obligation of the bank. Moreover, the bank should review the issuer's disclosure documents for compliance with SEC requirements, which call for a thorough explanation of the relationship between the bank and the mutual fund.

The Federal Reserve applies a stricter rule under Regulation Y (12 C.F.R. 225.125) when a bank holding company (as opposed to a bank) or nonbank subsidiary acts as an investment adviser to a mutual fund. In such a case, the fund may not have a name that is identical to, similar to, or a variation of the name of the bank holding company or a subsidiary bank.

2010.6.2.1.3 Permissible Use of Customer Information

Banking organizations should adopt policies and procedures regarding the use of confidential customer information for any purpose in connection with the sale of nondeposit investment products. The industry guidelines permit banks to share with third parties only limited customer information, such as name, address, telephone number, and types of products owned. It does not permit the sharing of more confidential information, such as specific or aggregate dollar amounts of investments, net worth, etc., without

the customer's prior acknowledgment and written consent.

2010.6.2.1.4 Arrangements with Third Parties

A majority of all nondeposit investment products sold on bank premises are sold by representatives of third parties. Under such arrangements, the third party has access to the institution's customers, while the bank is able to make nondeposit investment products available to interested customers without having to commit the resources and personnel necessary to directly sell such products. Third parties include wholly owned subsidiaries of a bank, bank-affiliated broker-dealers, unaffiliated broker-dealers, insurance companies, or other companies in the business of distributing nondeposit investment products on a retail basis.

A banking institution should conduct a comprehensive review of an unaffiliated third party before entering into any arrangement. The review should include an assessment of the third party's financial status, management experience, reputation, and ability to fulfill its contractual obligations to the bank, including compliance with the interagency statement.

The interagency statement calls for banks to enter into written agreements with any affiliated and unaffiliated third parties that sell nondeposit investment products on a bank's premises. Such agreements should be approved by a bank's board of directors or its designated committee. Agreements should outline the duties and responsibilities of each party; describe third-party activities permitted on bank premises; address the sharing or use of confidential customer information for investment sales activities; and define the terms for use of the institution's office space, equipment, and personnel. If an arrangement includes dual employees, the agreement must provide for written employment contracts that specify the duties of such employees and their compensation arrangements.

In addition, a third-party agreement should specify that the third party will comply with all applicable laws and regulations and will conduct its activities in a manner consistent with the interagency statement. The agreement should authorize the bank to monitor the third party's compliance with its agreement, and authorize the institution and Federal Reserve examination staff to have access to third-party records considered necessary to evaluate such compliance. These records should include examination results, sales-practice reviews, and

related correspondence provided to the third party by securities regulatory authorities. Finally, an agreement should provide for indemnification of the bank by an unaffiliated third party for the conduct of its employees in connection with sales activities.

Notwithstanding the provisions of a third-party agreement, a bank should monitor the conduct of nondeposit investment product sales programs to ensure that sales of nondeposit investment products are distinct from other bank activities and are not conducted in a manner that could confuse customers about the lack of insurance coverage for such investments.

2010.6.2.1.5 Contingency Planning

Nondeposit investment products are subject to price fluctuations caused by changes in interest rates, stock market valuations, etc. In the event of a sudden, sharp drop in the market value of nondeposit investment products, banking institutions may experience a heavy volume of customer inquiries, complaints, and redemptions. Management should develop contingency plans to address these situations. A major element of any contingency plan should be the provision of customer access to information pertaining to their investments. Other factors to consider in contingency planning include public relations and the ability of operations staff to handle increased volumes of transactions.

2010.6.2.2 Disclosures and Advertising

2010.6.2.2.1 Content, Form, and Timing of Disclosure

Nondeposit investment product sales programs should be conducted in a manner that ensures that customers are clearly and fully informed of the nature and risks associated with these products. In addition, nondeposit investment products must be clearly differentiated from insured deposits. The interagency statement identifies the following minimum disclosures that must be made to customers when providing investment advice, making investment recommendations, or effecting nondeposit investment product transactions:

- They are not insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC).
- They are not deposits or other obligations of the depository institution and are not guaranteed by the depository institution.

- They are subject to investment risks, including the possible loss of the principal invested.

Disclosure is the most important way of ensuring that retail customers understand the differences between nondeposit investment products and insured deposits. It is critical that the minimum disclosures be presented clearly and concisely in both oral and written communications. In this regard, the minimum disclosures should be provided—

- orally during any sales presentations (including telemarketing contacts) or when investment advice is given,
- orally and in writing before or at the time an investment account to purchase these products is opened, and
- in all advertisements and other promotional materials (as discussed further below).

The minimum disclosures may be made on a customer-account agreement or on a separate disclosure form. The disclosures must be conspicuous (highlighted through bolding, boxes, or a larger typeface). Disclosures contained directly on a customer-account agreement should be located on the front of the agreement or adjacent to the customer signature block.

Banking organizations are to obtain a written acknowledgment—on the customer-account agreement or on a separate form—from a customer confirming that the customer has received and understands the minimum disclosures. For nondeposit investment product accounts established before the interagency statement, banking organizations should obtain a disclosure acknowledgment from the customer at the time of the customer's next purchase transaction. If an institution solicits customers by telephone or mail, it should ensure that the customers receive the written disclosures and an acknowledgment to be signed and returned to the institution.

Customer-account statements (including combined statements for linked accounts) and trade confirmations that are provided by the bank or an affiliate should contain the minimum disclosures if they display the name or logo of the bank or its affiliate. Statements that provide account information about insured deposits and nondeposit investment products should clearly segregate the information about nondeposit investment products from the information about deposits to avoid customer confusion.

2010.6.2.2.2 Advertising

The interagency statement provides that advertisements in all media forms that identify specific investment products must conspicuously include the minimum disclosures and must not suggest or convey any inaccurate or misleading impressions about the nature of a nondeposit investment product. Promotional material that contains information about both FDIC-insured products and nondeposit investment products should clearly segregate the information about the two product types. Displays of promotional sales materials related to nondeposit investment products in a bank's retail areas should be grouped separately from material related to insured bank products.

Examiners should review telemarketing scripts to determine whether bank personnel are making inquiries about customer investment objectives, offering investment advice, or identifying particular investment products or types of products. In such cases, the scripts must contain the minimum disclosures. Bank personnel relying on the scripts must be formally authorized to sell nondeposit investment products by their employers and must have training that is the substantive equivalent of that required for personnel qualified to sell securities as registered representatives (see the discussion on training below).

2010.6.2.2.3 Additional Disclosures

A depository institution should apprise customers of certain material relationships. For example, sales personnel should inform a customer orally and in writing before the sale about any advisory relationship existing between the bank (or an affiliate) and a mutual fund whose shares are being sold by the depository institution. Similarly, sales personnel should disclose fees, penalties, or surrender charges associated with a nondeposit investment product orally and in writing before or at the time the customer purchases the product. The SEC requires written disclosure of this information in the investment product's prospectus.

If sales activities include any written or oral representations concerning insurance coverage by any entity other than the FDIC (for example, Securities Investor Protection Corporation (SIPC) insurance of broker-dealer accounts, a

state insurance fund, or a private insurance company), then clear and accurate explanations of the coverage must also be provided to customers at that time to minimize possible confusion with FDIC insurance. Such disclosures should not suggest that other forms of insurance are the substantive equivalent to FDIC deposit insurance.

2010.6.2.3 Setting and Circumstances

2010.6.2.3.1 Physical Separation from Deposit Activities

Selling or recommending nondeposit investment products on the premises of a banking institution may give the impression that the products are FDIC-insured or are obligations of the bank. To minimize customer confusion with deposit products, nondeposit investment product sales activities should be conducted in a location that is physically distinct from the areas where retail deposits are taken. Bank employees located at teller windows may not provide investment advice, make investment recommendations about investment products, or accept orders (even unsolicited orders) for nondeposit investment products.

Examiners must evaluate the particular circumstances of each bank in order to form an opinion about whether nondeposit investment product sales activities are sufficiently separate from deposit activities. FDIC insurance signs and promotional material related to FDIC-insured deposits should be removed from the investment-product sales area and replaced with signs indicating that the area is for the sale of investment products. Signs referring to specific investments should prominently contain the minimum disclosures. In the limited situation where physical constraints prevent nondeposit investment product sales activities from being conducted in a distinct and separate area, the institution has a heightened responsibility to ensure that appropriate measures are taken to minimize customer confusion.

A bank that enters into a third-party brokerage arrangement with a broker or dealer registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the 1934 Act) will not itself be considered to be a broker subject to registration under the 1934 Act if the bank complies with the nine requirements set forth in section 3(a)(4)(B) of the 1934 Act. These requirements include clear identification of the broker or dealer as the person providing the brokerage services; clear physical separation of deposit-taking activities from bro-

kerage transactions; prohibition of bank employees' receiving incentive compensation based on brokerage transactions; limitation of bank employees to clerical or ministerial functions with respect to brokerage transactions; and specific disclosures and other requirements. Failure by a bank to comply with these requirements will not automatically require the bank to register but brings into question the exemption of the bank from the registration requirements of the 1934 Act.

Business cards for designated sales personnel should clearly indicate that they sell nondeposit investment products or, if applicable, are employed by a broker-dealer.

The interagency statement was intended to generally cover sales made to retail customers in a bank's lobby. However, some banks may have an arrangement whereby retail customers purchase nondeposit investment products at a location generally confined to institutional services (such as the corporate money desk). In such cases, the banking institutions should still ensure that retail customers receive the minimum disclosures to minimize any possible customer confusion about nondeposit investment products and insured deposits.

2010.6.2.3.2 Hybrid Instruments and Accounts

In cases in which a depository institution offers accounts that link traditional bank deposits with nondeposit investment products, such as a cash management account,⁸ the accounts should be opened at the investment sales area by trained personnel. In light of the hybrid characteristics of these products, the opportunity for customer confusion is amplified, so the depository institution must take special care in the account-opening process to ensure that a customer is accurately informed that—

- funds deposited into a sweep account will only be FDIC-insured until they are swept into a nondeposit investment product account and
- customer-account statements may disclose balances for both insured and nondeposit product accounts.

2010.6.2.4 Designation, Training, and Supervision of Sales Personnel and Personnel Making Referrals

2010.6.2.4.1 Hiring and Training of Sales Personnel

Banking organizations hiring sales personnel for nondeposit investment product programs should investigate the backgrounds of prospective employees. In cases in which candidates for employment have previous investment industry experience, the bank should check whether the individual has been the subject of any disciplinary actions by securities, state, or other regulators.

Unregistered bank sales personnel should receive training that is the substantive equivalent of that provided to personnel qualified to sell securities as registered representatives. Training should cover the areas of product knowledge, trading practices, regulatory requirements and restrictions, and customer-protection issues. In addition, training programs should cover the institution's policies and procedures regarding sales of nondeposit investment products and should be conducted continually to ensure that staff are kept abreast of new products and compliance issues.

Bank employees whose sales activities are limited to mutual funds or variable annuities should receive training equivalent to that ordinarily needed to pass FINRA's Series 6 limited representative examination, which typically involves approximately 30 to 60 hours of preparation, including about 20 hours of classroom training. Bank employees who are authorized to sell additional investment products and securities should receive training that is appropriate to pass the NYSE's Series 7 general securities representative examination, which typically involves 160 to 250 hours of study, including at least 40 hours of classroom training.

The training of third-party or dual employees is the responsibility of the third party. When entering into an agreement with a third party, a banking organization should be satisfied that the third party is able to train third-party and dual employees about compliance with the minimum disclosures and other requirements of the interagency statement. The bank should obtain and review copies of third-party training and compliance materials in order to monitor the third party's performance regarding its training obligations.

8. A hybrid account may incorporate deposit and brokerage services, credit/debit card features, and automated sweep arrangements.

2010.6.2.4.2 Training of Bank Personnel Who Make Referrals

Bank employees, such as tellers and platform personnel, who are not authorized to provide investment advice, make investment recommendations, or sell nondeposit investment products but who may refer customers to authorized nondeposit investment products sales personnel, should receive training regarding the strict limitations on their activities. In general, bank personnel who are not authorized to sell nondeposit investment products are not permitted to discuss general or specific investment products, prequalify prospective customers as to financial status and investment history and objectives, open new accounts, or take orders on a solicited or unsolicited basis. Such personnel may contact customers for the purposes of—

- determining whether the customer wishes to receive investment information;
- inquiring whether the customer wishes to discuss investments with an authorized sales representative; and
- arranging appointments to meet with authorized bank sales personnel or third-party broker–dealer registered sales personnel.

The minimum disclosure guidelines do not apply to referrals made by personnel not authorized to sell nondeposit investment products if the referral does not provide investment advice, identify specific investment products, or make investment recommendations.

2010.6.2.4.3 Supervision of Personnel

Banking institution policies and procedures should designate, by title or name, the individuals responsible for supervising nondeposit investment product sales activities, as well as referral activities initiated by bank employees not authorized to sell these products. Personnel assigned responsibility for management of sales programs for these products should have supervisory experience and training equivalent to that required of a general securities principal as required by the FINRA for broker–dealers. Supervisory personnel should be responsible for the institution's compliance with policies and procedures on nondeposit investment products, applicable laws and regulations, and the interagency statement. When sales of these products

are conducted by a third party, supervisory personnel should be responsible for monitoring compliance with the agreement between the bank and the third party, as well as compliance with the interagency statement, particularly the guideline calling for nondeposit investment product sales to be separate and distinct from the deposit activities of the bank.

2010.6.2.5 Suitability and Sales Practices

2010.6.2.5.1 Suitability of Recommendations

Suitability refers to the matching of customer financial means and investment objectives with a suitable product. If customers are placed into unsuitable investments, the resulting loss of consumer confidence could have detrimental effects on an institution's reputation. Many first-time investors may not fully understand the risks associated with nondeposit investment products and may assume that the banking institution is responsible for the preservation of the principal of their investment.

Banking institutions that sell nondeposit investment products directly to customers should develop detailed policies and procedures addressing the suitability of investment recommendations and related record-keeping requirements. Sales personnel who recommend nondeposit investment products to customers should have reasonable grounds for believing that the products recommended are suitable for the particular customer on the basis of information provided by the customer. A reasonable effort must be made to obtain, record, and update information concerning the customer's financial profile (such as tax status, other investments, income), investment objectives, and other information necessary to make recommendations.

In determining whether sales personnel are meeting their suitability responsibilities, examiners should review the practices for conformance with the banking institution's policies and procedures. The examiner's review should include a sample of customer files to determine the extent of customer information collected, recorded, and updated (for subsequent purchases), and whether investment recommendations appear unsuitable in light of such information.

Nondeposit investment product sales programs conducted by third-party broker–dealers are subject to FINRA's suitability and other

sales-practice rules. To avoid duplicating FINRA examination efforts, examiners should rely on FINRA's most recent sales-practice review of the third party, when available. To the extent that no such FINRA review has been completed within the last two years, Reserve Banks should consult with Board staff to determine an appropriate examination scope for suitability compliance before proceeding further.

2010.6.2.5.2 Sales Practices

The banking organization should have policies and procedures that address undesirable practices by sales personnel intended to generate additional commission income through the churning or switching of accounts from one product to another.

2010.6.2.5.3 Customer Complaints

The banking organization should have policies and procedures for handling customer complaints related to nondeposit investment products. The process should provide for the recording and tracking of all complaints and require periodic reviews of complaints by compliance personnel. The merits and circumstances of each complaint (including all documentation relating to the transaction) should be considered when determining the proper form of resolution. Reasonable timeframes should be established for addressing complaints.

2010.6.2.6 Compensation

Incentive compensation programs specifically related to the sale of nondeposit investment products may include sales commissions, limited fees for referring prospective customers to an authorized sales representative, and nonmonetary compensation (prizes, awards, and gifts). Compensation that is paid by unaffiliated third parties (such as mutual fund distributors) to banking organization staff must be approved in writing by bank management; be consistent with the bank's written internal code of conduct relating to the acceptance of remuneration from third parties; and be consistent with the proscriptions of the Bank Bribery Act (18 U.S.C. 215) and the banking agencies' implementing guidelines to that act (see 52 *Federal Register* 39277, October 21,

1987). Compensation policies should establish appropriate limits on the extent of compensation that may be paid to banking organization staff by unaffiliated third parties.

Incentive compensation programs must not be structured in such a way as to result in unsuitable investment recommendations or sales to customers. In addition, if sales personnel sell both deposit and nondeposit products, similar financial incentives should be in place for sales of both types of products. A compensation program that offers significantly higher remuneration for selling a specific product (for example, a proprietary mutual fund) may be inappropriate if it results in unsuitable recommendations to customers. A compensation program that is intended to provide remuneration for a group of bank employees (such as a branch or department) is permissible as long as the program is based on the overall performance of the group in meeting bank objectives regarding a broad variety of bank services and products, and is not based principally on the volume of sales on nondeposit investment products.

Individual bank employees, such as tellers, may receive a one-time nominal fee of a fixed dollar amount for referring customers to authorized sales personnel to discuss nondeposit investment products. However, the payment of the fee should not depend on whether the referral results in a transaction. Nonmonetary compensation to bank employees for referrals should be similarly structured.

Auditors and compliance personnel should not participate in incentive compensation programs directly related to the results of nondeposit investment product sales programs.

2010.6.2.7 Compliance

Institutions must develop and maintain written policies and procedures that effectively monitor and assess compliance with the interagency statement and other applicable laws and regulations and ensure appropriate follow-up to correct identified deficiencies. Compliance programs should be independent of sales activities with respect to scheduling, compensation, and performance evaluations. Compliance personnel should periodically report compliance findings to the institution's board of directors or a designated committee of the board as part of the board's ongoing oversight of nondeposit investment product activities. Compliance personnel

should have appropriate training and experience with nondeposit investment product sales programs, applicable laws and regulations, and the interagency statement.

Banking organizations should institute compliance programs for nondeposit investment products that are similar to those of securities broker-dealers. This includes a review of new accounts and a periodic review of transactions in existing accounts to identify any potential abusive practices, such as unsuitable recommendations or churning or switching practices. Compliance personnel should also oversee the prompt resolution of customer complaints and review complaint logs for questionable sales practices. Compliance personnel should use MIS reports on early redemptions and sales patterns for specific sales representatives and products to identify any potentially abusive practices. In addition, referral activities of bank personnel should be reviewed to ensure that they are conducted in a manner that conforms to the guidelines in the interagency statement.

When nondeposit investment products are sold by third parties on bank premises, the bank's compliance program should provide for oversight of the third party's compliance with its agreement with the bank, including conformance to the disclosure and separate facilities guidelines of the interagency statement. The results of such oversight should be reported to the board of directors or to a designated committee of the board. Management should promptly obtain the third party's commitment to correct identified problems. Proper follow-up by the bank's compliance personnel should verify the third party's corrective actions.

2010.6.2.8 Audit

Audit personnel should be responsible for assessing the effectiveness of the depository institution's compliance function and overall management of the nondeposit investment product sales program. The scope and frequency of audit's review of nondeposit investment product activities will depend on the complexity and sales volume of a sales program, and whether there are any indications of potential or actual problems. Audits should cover all of the issues discussed in the interagency statement. Internal audit staff should be familiar with nondeposit investment products and receive ongoing training. Audit personnel should report their findings

to the board of directors or a designated committee of the board, and proper follow-up should be performed. Audit activities with respect to third parties should include a review of their compliance function and the effectiveness of the bank's oversight of the third party's activities.

2010.6.2.9 Joint Interpretations of the Interagency Statement

In response to a banking association's inquiry, the banking supervisory agencies issued on September 12, 1995, joint interpretations regarding the February 1994 Interagency Statement on Retail Sales of Nondeposit Investment Products by banking and thrift organizations, previously discussed. The agencies also authorized the use of alternative abbreviated minimum disclosures for advertisements. The alternative minimum disclosures need not be made at all in certain types of advertisements. The use of abbreviated disclosures offers an optional alternative to the longer disclosures prescribed by the interagency statement.

2010.6.2.9.1 Disclosure Matters

The agencies agreed that there are limited situations in which the disclosure guidelines need not apply or where a shorter logo format may be used in lieu of the longer written disclosures called for by the interagency statement.

The interagency statement disclosures do not need to be provided in the following situations:

- radio broadcasts of 30 seconds or less
- electronic signs⁹
- signs, such as banners and posters, when used only as location indicators

Additionally, third-party vendors not affiliated with the depository institution need not make the interagency statement disclosures on nondeposit investment product confirmations and in account statements that may incidentally, with a valid business purpose, contain the name of the depository institution.

The banking agencies have been asked whether shorter, logo-format disclosures may be used in visual media, such as television broadcasts, ATM screens, billboards, signs, and post-

9. "Electronic signs" may include billboard-type signs that are electronic, time and temperature signs, and ticker-tape signs. Electronic signs would not include media such as television, online services, or ATMs.

ers, and in written advertisements and promotional materials, such as brochures. The text of an acceptable logo-format disclosure would include the following statements:

- not FDIC-insured
- no bank guarantee
- may lose value

The logo-format disclosures would be boxed, set in boldface type, and displayed in a conspicuous manner. The full disclosures prescribed by the interagency statement should continue to be provided in written acknowledgment forms that are signed by customers. An example of an acceptable logo disclosure is—

NOT FDIC- INSURED	May lose value No bank guarantee
----------------------------------	--

2010.6.2.9.2 *Joint Interpretations on Retail Sales of Nondeposit Investment Products*

The banking agencies’ joint statement also addressed the following:

- *Sales from lobby area presumed retail.* Retail sales include (but are not limited to) sales to individuals by depository institution personnel or third-party personnel conducted in or adjacent to a depository institution’s lobby area. Sales activities occurring in another location of a depository institution may also be retail sales activities covered by the interagency statement depending on the facts and circumstances.
- *Government or municipal securities dealers or desks.* Sales of government and municipal securities made in a depository institution’s dealer department that is located away from the lobby area are not subject to the interagency statement. Such departments are already regulated by the banking agencies and are subject to the statutory requirements for registration of government and municipal securities brokers and dealers. Further, such brokers and dealers are subject to sales-practice and other regulations of the Depart-

ment of the Treasury, the SEC, and designated securities self-regulatory organizations.

- *Fiduciary accounts, affiliated trust companies, and custodian accounts.* The interagency statement generally does not apply to fiduciary accounts administered by a depository institution. However, for fiduciary accounts in which the customer directs investments, such as self-directed individual retirement accounts, the disclosures prescribed by the interagency statement should be provided. Nevertheless, disclosures need not be made to customers acting as professional money managers. Fiduciary accounts administered by an affiliated trust company on the depository institution’s premises would be treated the same way as the fiduciary accounts of the institution.

With respect to custodian accounts maintained by a depository institution, the interagency statement does not apply to traditional custodial activities, for example, collecting interest and dividend payments for securities held in the accounts or handling the delivery or collection of securities or funds in connection with a transaction.

- *Affiliated standalone broker–dealers.* The statement applies specifically to sales of non-deposit investment products on the premises of a depository institution, for example, whenever sales occur in the lobby area. The statement also applies to sales activities of an affiliated standalone broker–dealer resulting from a referral of retail customers by the depository institution to the broker–dealer.

2010.6.3 **INSPECTION/EXAMINATION OBJECTIVES**

1. To determine that the banking organization has taken appropriate measures to ensure that retail customers clearly understand the differences between insured deposits and non-deposit investment products and receive the minimum disclosures both orally during sales presentations (including telemarketing) and in writing.
2. To assess the adequacy of the institution’s policies and procedures, sales practices, and oversight by management and the board of directors to ensure an operating environment that fosters customer protection in all facets of the sales program.
3. To ensure that the sales program is con-

ducted in a safe and sound manner that is in compliance with the interagency statement, Federal Reserve guidelines, regulations, and applicable laws.

4. To assess the effectiveness of the institution's compliance and audit programs for nondeposit investment product operations.
5. To obtain commitments for corrective action when policies, procedures, practices, or management oversight is deficient or the institution has failed to comply with the interagency statement or applicable laws and regulations.

2010.6.4 INSPECTION/EXAMINATION PROCEDURES

2010.6.4.1 Scope of the Procedures

These procedures are based on the guidelines outlined in the interagency statement. The interagency statement applies to all banking organizations, including state member banks and the U.S. branches and agencies of foreign banks supervised by the Federal Reserve.

These examination procedures are intended to be used when examining a state member bank (or a state-licensed U.S. branch or agency of a foreign bank) that engages directly in the retail sale of nondeposit investment products.

This set of examination procedures is also meant to be used in conjunction with other procedures in this manual when examining a nonbank subsidiary that sells nondeposit investment products on bank premises. See the following sections for related examination procedures:

- Section 3130.1: Section 4(c)(8) of the BHC Act—Investment or Financial Advisers
- Section 3230.0: Section 4(c)(8) of the BHC Act—Securities Brokerage
- Section 3600.27: Providing Administrative and Certain Other Services to Mutual Funds

Program Management and Organization

1. Evaluate the institution's structure and reporting lines (legal and functional) for its retail nondeposit investment products operations. Determine whether retail sales of nondeposit investment products are being made directly by employees of the depository institution or through an affiliated or

unaffiliated third party. Identify the principals responsible for the management of the nondeposit investment products sales program. Review their backgrounds, qualifications, and tenure with the institution.

2. Determine the role of the board of directors of each legal entity involved in the sale of nondeposit investment products in authorizing and controlling nondeposit investment products activities on bank premises. Evaluate the adequacy of MIS reports relied on by the board (or a designated committee) and senior management to manage these activities.
3. Describe the membership and responsibilities of management or board committees for nondeposit investment product retail sales programs. Review the minutes maintained by these committees for information related to the conduct of retail nondeposit investment product sales programs.
4. Review and evaluate the institution's policies and procedures, objectives, and budget for nondeposit investment products activities. In so doing, consider the following:
 - a. who prepared the material
 - b. how it fits into the institution's overall strategic objectives
 - c. whether the goals and objectives are realistic
 - d. whether actual results are routinely compared to plans and budgets
5. Determine how policies and procedures for nondeposit investment products activities are developed and at what level in the institution they are formally approved. Review the policies and procedures to see that they are consistent with the interagency statement and address the following matters:
 - a. disclosure and advertising
 - b. physical separation from deposit-taking activities
 - c. compliance programs and internal audit
 - d. hiring, training, supervision, and compensation practices for sales staff and personnel making referrals
 - e. types of products offered, selection criteria
 - f. restrictions on a mutual fund's use of names similar or identical to that of the bank holding company or its subsidiary banks
 - g. suitability and sales practices
 - h. use of customer information
 - i. transactions with affiliated parties
 - j. role of third parties, if applicable
6. Determine how management oversees com-

pliance with the policies and procedures in item 5.

7. Review the product selection and development process to ensure that it considers customer needs and investment objectives.
8. Determine if the depository institution is covered by blanket bond insurance applicable to nondeposit investment product retail sales activities.
9. If the institution sells proprietary nondeposit investment products and performs related back-office operations, review—
 - a. the work flow and position responsibilities within the sales and operations function, and
 - b. available flow charts, job descriptions, and policies and procedures.

After discussions with management, conduct a walk-through, tracing the path of a typical transaction. Evaluate the effectiveness and efficiency of the work flow and the overall operation.
10. Determine whether the institution has established any contingency plans for handling adverse events affecting nondeposit investment product programs, such as a sudden market downturn or period of heavy redemptions.
11. Review the institution's earnings and evaluate the—
 - a. profitability of nondeposit investment products activities, including any investment advisory fees it may receive, and
 - b. income and expense from the sales, investment advisory, and proprietary fund management activities related to nondeposit investment products, as a percentage of non-interest income and expense.

Disclosures and Advertising

The interagency statement identifies certain minimum disclosures that must be made to customers. The disclosures must state that nondeposit investment products—

- are not insured by the FDIC;
- are not deposits or other obligations of the institution and are not guaranteed by the institution; and
- are subject to investment risks, including the possible loss of the principal invested.

12. Determine whether the minimum disclosures are being provided orally to customers during sales presentations (including

telemarketing contacts) or when giving investment advice on specific investment products.

13. Determine if the customer-account agreement (or a separate disclosure form) presents the minimum disclosures clearly and conspicuously. The disclosures should be prominent (highlighted through bolding, boxes, or a larger typeface) and should be located on the front of the customer-account agreement or adjacent to the customer signature block.
14. Determine whether customers sign an acknowledgment that they have received and understand the minimum disclosures. The acknowledgment can be on the customer-account agreement or it can be on a separate disclosure form. Determine if customers who opened accounts before the interagency statement was issued receive the written minimum disclosures and acknowledge receipt at the time of their next transaction. Review a sample of customer accounts to determine whether customers received the minimum oral and written disclosures.
15. When sales confirmations or account statements provided by the bank or an affiliate bear the name or logo of the bank or an affiliate, determine whether the minimum disclosures are conspicuously displayed on the front of the documents.
16. Review advertisements and promotional material that identify specific nondeposit investment products to determine whether they conspicuously display the minimum disclosures or the abbreviated logo-format disclosures. Any materials that contain information about insured deposits and nondeposit investment products should clearly segregate the information about investment products from the information about deposits.
17. Review telemarketing material used to solicit new business. To the extent that employees identify specific products, seek customer investment objectives, make investment recommendations, or give investment advice, determine whether—
 - a. the minimum disclosures are included in the script;
 - b. bank employees engaged in telemarketing activities are authorized by the bank to recommend or sell nondeposit investment products, and whether their train-

- ing is the substantive equivalent of that required for securities registered representatives; and
- c. the material contains any statements that may be misleading or confusing to customers regarding the uninsured nature of nondeposit investment products.
18. When nondeposit investment products are sold by employees of an affiliated broker-dealer, determine if any written or oral representations concerning insurance coverage provided by SIPC, a state insurance fund, or a private insurance company are clear and accurate and do not suggest that they are the substantive equivalent to FDIC insurance available for certain deposit products.
 19. When the bank or its bank holding company (or affiliate) acts as an investment adviser to or has some other material relationship with a mutual fund whose shares are sold by the bank, determine whether—
 - a. oral and written disclosure of the relationship is made before the purchase of the shares;
 - b. bank-advised mutual funds do not have names identical to the bank's;
 - c. bank-advised mutual funds with names similar to the bank's are sold pursuant to a sales program designed to minimize the risk of customer confusion; and
 - d. mutual funds advised by bank holding companies do not have names identical to, similar to, or a variation of the name of the holding company or its subsidiary bank.
 20. Determine whether disclosure of any sales charges, fees, penalties, or surrender charges relating to nondeposit investment products is made orally and in writing before the purchase of these products.
 21. Obtain and review the most recent FINRA examination results for the third party from the bank or the third-party broker-dealer. Also obtain and review examination-related correspondence and any disciplinary matters between the broker-dealer and the FINRA or SEC. Review the institution's progress in addressing any investment recommendations or deficiencies noted in the examination results or other material.
 22. Where any retail sales facilities of the institution are leased to an affiliated third party that sells nondeposit investment products—
 - a. assess whether the lease was negotiated on an arm's-length basis and on terms comparable to similar lease agreements in the local market and
 - b. review any intercompany relationships for compliance with sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act.

Settings and Circumstances

Third-Party Agreements

21. When sales of nondeposit investment products are conducted by employees or representatives of a third party, review all contractual agreements between the bank and the third party to determine whether they cover the following:
 - a. duties and responsibilities of each party
 - b. third-party compliance with all applicable laws and regulations and the inter-agency statement
 - c. authorization for the institution to over-see and verify compliance by the third party
22. Obtain and review the most recent FINRA examination results for the third party from the bank or the third-party broker-dealer. Also obtain and review examination-related correspondence and any disciplinary matters between the broker-dealer and the FINRA or SEC. Review the institution's progress in addressing any investment recommendations or deficiencies noted in the examination results or other material.
23. Where any retail sales facilities of the institution are leased to an affiliated third party that sells nondeposit investment products—
 - a. assess whether the lease was negotiated on an arm's-length basis and on terms comparable to similar lease agreements in the local market and
 - b. review any intercompany relationships for compliance with sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act.
24. Determine whether the sale of nondeposit investment products is conducted in a physical location distinct from deposit-taking activities of the bank. In so doing—
 - a. verify that nondeposit investment products are not sold from teller windows;
 - b. determine if signs or other means are used to distinguish the nondeposit investment products sales area from the retail deposit-taking area of the institution; and
 - c. determine whether space limitations preclude having a separate investment-products sales area. If so, note how the institution clearly distinguishes nondeposit investment products from insured bank products or obligations.

Qualifications and Training

25. Determine whether employees of a depository institution are providing investment advice, making investment recommendations, or selling nondeposit investment products directly to retail customers. If so, determine whether—
 - a. the depository institution has performed background checks and
 - b. sales personnel have received training that is the substantive equivalent to that provided to a securities registered representative.
26. Review the training program provided to employees of the depository institution who are authorized to provide investment advice, make investment recommendations, or sell nondeposit investment products. Assess whether the program addresses the following subject matters:
 - a. general overview of U.S. financial markets
 - b. detailed information concerning specific product lines being offered for sale
 - c. generally accepted trading practices for the products available for sale
 - d. general overview of federal securities laws and regulations (antifraud and disclosure)
 - e. banking regulations and guidelines applicable to sales activities (such as anti-tying prohibitions, the interagency statement, supervisory letters on sales of specific investment products, etc.)
 - f. policies and procedures specific to the institution
 - g. appropriate sales practices, including suitability of investment recommendations and disclosure obligations
 - h. appropriate use of customer lists and confidential customer information
27. Determine whether the institution has any continuing-education program or periodic seminars on new products or compliance.
28. Determine whether supervisors of bank sales personnel receive special training pertaining to their supervisory responsibilities that is the substantive equivalent of training required for supervisors (General Securities Principals) of registered representatives.
29. Review the training of bank employees who are not authorized to sell nondeposit investment products but who make referrals, such as tellers, customer service representatives, and others. In so doing, determine whether such employees have been provided train-

ing in appropriate referral practices, including the limits on their activities.

Suitability and Sales Practices

The following procedures on suitability and sales practices are applicable when conducting an examination of a depository institution whose employees offer investment advice, make investment recommendations, or sell nondeposit investment products. Examinations involving registered broker-dealers should rely on the FINRA's review of sales practices or its examination to assess the organization's compliance with suitability requirements.

30. Determine whether depository institution personnel recommend nondeposit investment products to customers. If so, determine whether sales personnel obtain, record, and update the following information:
 - a. age
 - b. tax status
 - c. current investments and overall financial profile, including an estimate of net worth*
 - d. investment objectives*
 - e. other personal information deemed necessary to offer reasonable investment advice*
31. Review a representative sample of customer accounts that were opened at several different branch locations. Assess whether customer suitability information is obtained and whether investments appear unsuitable in light of such information.
32. Review customer complaints involving suitability of investment recommendations. Determine whether the bank's original recommendations appear unsuitable in the context of the information available at the time of sale. Note how suitability complaints are resolved.

Compensation

33. If employees of the depository institution provide investment advice, make investment recommendations, or sell nondeposit

*Not necessary when money market mutual funds are being recommended.

- investment products, determine whether—
- a. any incentive compensation plan available to nondeposit investment product sales personnel strongly favors proprietary or other specific products; if so, determine how the institution ensures that customers are not placed into unsuitable investments, and
 - b. compliance and audit personnel are excluded from incentive compensation programs directly related to the results of nondeposit investment product sales.
34. Determine whether fees paid to bank employees for referrals to depository institution sales personnel or third-party sales staff are based on a one-time, nominal fee of a fixed dollar amount and are not dependent on a successful sale.
 35. Determine if the bank's compensation policies address remuneration of bank employees by third parties and if these policies are incorporated into the bank's code of conduct. In so doing, determine whether the bank's policies were approved by the board of directors and are consistent with the prescriptions of the Bank Bribery Act and the interagency guidelines adopted thereunder.
- Compliance and Audit*
36. Review and assess the depository institution's compliance program for nondeposit investment product sales activities. In so doing, consider the following:
 - a. frequency and scope
 - b. workpapers
 - c. degree of independence from the sales program
 - d. follow-up on material findings
 - e. centralization of findings from all compliance areas
 - f. role of the board of directors in reviewing findings
 37. Review the criteria used to evaluate bank sales personnel for compliance with the institution's policies and procedures, specifically those policies relating to disclosure and suitability.
 38. Determine whether compliance personnel approve or review new accounts, periodically review transactions in accounts, and review sales and referral activities of bank personnel.
 39. Review the customer complaint process and the associated complaint log to determine if complaints are addressed on a timely basis.
 40. Review progress in addressing identified compliance problems.
 41. Evaluate the experience, training, and qualifications of compliance personnel.
 42. Review the scope of audits and determine if the following areas were adequately addressed:
 - a. disclosure and advertising
 - b. physical separation of nondeposit investment product sales activities
 - c. compliance
 - d. sales practices and suitability
 - e. product selection and development
 - f. use of confidential customer information by bank and third-party sales personnel
 - g. third-party compliance with its agreement with the institution
 - h. personnel training and background checks
 - i. operations (clearing, cash receipts and disbursements, accounting, redemptions, etc.), if applicable
 43. Obtain all internal and external audit reports regarding the institution's nondeposit investment product activities performed over the past year (including management's responses). Review for exceptions, recommendations, and follow-up actions. Ascertain if significant exceptions were presented to the institution's audit committee or board of directors for their review.
 44. For external audits, obtain a copy of the engagement letter and comment on the adequacy of the firm's audit review.

Supervision of Subsidiaries (Sharing of Facilities and Staff by Banking Organizations)

Section 2010.8

A banking organization should be able to readily determine for which entity within the bank holding company an individual is employed, and members of a banking organization's staff must be able to identify which subsidiary of the holding company employs them. The distinction is important because complex banking organizations must take steps to ensure that their officials and employees have both the corporate and legal authority to carry out their duties, and because the organization's personnel should only be performing activities that are permitted by law to be carried out by the holding company or its particular subsidiaries.

2010.8.1 IDENTIFICATION OF FACILITIES AND STAFF

Generally, unless there are statutory restrictions or the Federal Reserve or other regulators have issued explicit written proscriptions, such as those concerning mutual fund sales on bank premises, there is no fundamental legal prohibition on the entities of a banking organization sharing or using unmarked contiguous facilities and, in some instances, sharing officials and employees. There are, however, concerns about safety and soundness and conflicts of interest. These may arise when a banking organization does not take appropriate actions to define and differentiate the functions and responsibilities of each of its entities and staff.

Good corporate governance requires that a banking organization be able to readily identify the authority and responsibilities of its officials and employees at each of its entities, especially where the entities share facilities or use contiguous offices that are not clearly marked to indicate the identity of the different entities. This is necessary to ensure that—

1. an official or employee who makes a commitment to a counterparty on behalf of the organization has both the corporate and legal authority to do so,
2. the counterparty understands with whom it is dealing, and
3. each entity is in compliance with any legal restrictions under which it operates.

To accomplish the goal of ready identification, a banking organization should maintain well-defined job descriptions for each category of its staff at each entity. When officials and employees of one entity have responsibilities for

other entities, particularly in shared facilities, the staff's responsibilities should be clearly defined and, when appropriate, disclosed or made clear to customers and the public in general. This procedure clarifies for both the public and the regulators for which entity officials or employees are carrying out their duties and responsibilities. Also, this clarifies whether an entity is operating within the scope of its charter, license, or other legal restrictions. Finally, a banking organization should establish and maintain appropriate internal controls designed to ensure the separation of the functions of the legal entities, when required, as well as have an adequate audit program to monitor such activities.

If officials and employees have responsibilities for other offices or affiliates of the banking organization, particularly those that share facilities, these responsibilities should be clearly defined and, when appropriate, disclosed or made clear to customers and the public in general. This procedure clarifies for which entity employees are carrying out their duties. Furthermore, in establishing employee responsibilities, management should ensure that they are within the scope of the entity's license or charter.

2010.8.2 EXAMINER GUIDANCE ON SHARING FACILITIES AND STAFF

Examiners should continue to be fully aware of the issues and potential problems involved in the sharing of staff and the sharing or use of unmarked contiguous facilities by the different entities of a banking organization with varied activities. At a minimum, examiners should check to see that a banking organization maintains clear records indicating the duties and responsibilities of the officials and employees at each of its entities. They should also take steps to check whether, in situations when an official or employee may perform duties for more than one entity in a shared facility, the banking organization has adequate policies and controls in place to ensure that its staff have the corporate and legal capacity to commit the organization to its counterparties and that the duties are carried out in conformance with the statutory restrictions applicable to each of the entities. See SR-95-34 (SUP).

Supervision of Subsidiaries

(Required Absences from Sensitive Positions) Section 2010.9

One of the many basic tenets of internal control is that a banking organization (bank holding company, state member bank, and foreign banking organization) needs to ensure that its employees in sensitive positions are absent from their duties for a minimum of two consecutive weeks. Such a requirement enhances the viability of a sound internal control environment because most frauds or embezzlements require the continuous presence of the wrongdoer.

In brief, this section contains a statement emphasizing the need for banking organizations to conduct an assessment of significant risk areas before developing a policy on required absences from sensitive positions. After making this assessment, the organization should require that employees in sensitive key positions, such as trading and wire transfer, not be allowed to transact or otherwise carry out, either physically or through electronic access, their assigned duties for a minimum of two consecutive weeks per year. The prescribed period of absence should, under all circumstances, be sufficient to allow all pending transactions to clear. It should also require that an individual's daily work be processed by another employee during the employee's absence. (See SR-96-37.)

2010.9.1 STATEMENT ON REQUIRED ABSENCES FROM SENSITIVE POSITIONS

A comprehensive system of internal controls is essential for a financial institution to safeguard its assets and capital, and to avoid undue reputational and legal risk. Senior management is responsible for establishing an appropriate system of internal controls and monitoring compliance with that system. Although no single control element should be relied on to prevent fraud and abuse, these acts are more easily perpetrated when proper segregation and rotation of duties do not exist. As a result, the Federal Reserve is reemphasizing the following prudent banking practices that should be incorporated into a banking organization's internal control procedures. These practices are designed to enhance the viability of a sound internal control environment, as most internal frauds or embezzlements necessitate the constant presence of the offender to prevent the detection of illegal activities.

When developing comprehensive internal control procedures, each banking organization should first make a critical assessment of its significant areas and sensitive positions. This

assessment should consider all employees, but should focus more on those with authority to execute transactions, signing authority and access to the books and records of the banking organization, as well as those employees who can influence or cause such activities to occur. Particular attention should be paid to areas engaged in trading and wire-transfer operations, including personnel who may have reconciliation or other back-office responsibilities.

After producing a profile of high-risk areas and activities, it would be expected that a minimum absence of two consecutive weeks per year be required of employees in sensitive positions. The prescribed period of absence should, under all circumstances, be sufficient to allow all pending transactions to clear and to provide for an independent monitoring of the transactions that the absent employee is responsible for initiating or processing. This practice could be implemented through a requirement that affected employees take vacation or leave, the rotation of assignments in lieu of required vacation, or a combination of both so the prescribed level of absence is attained. Some banking organizations, particularly smaller ones, might consider compensating controls such as continuous rotation of assignments in lieu of required absences to avoid placing an undue burden on the banking organization or its employees.

For the policy to be effective, individuals having electronic access to systems and records from remote locations must be denied this access during their absence. Similarly, indirect access can be controlled by not allowing others to take and carry out instructions from the absent employee. Of primary importance is the requirement that an individual's daily work be processed by another employee during his or her absence; this process is essential to bring to the forefront any unusual activity of the absent employee.

Exceptions to the required-absence policy may be necessary from time to time. However, management should exercise the appropriate discretion and properly document any waivers that are granted. Internal auditing should be made aware of individuals who receive waivers and the circumstances necessitating the exceptions.

If a banking organization's internal control procedures do not now include the above practices, they should be promptly amended. After

the procedures have been enhanced, they should be disseminated to all employees, and the documentation regarding their receipt and acknowledgment maintained. Additionally, adherence to the procedures should be included in the appropriate audit schedules, and the auditors should be cognizant of potential electronic access or other circumventing opportunities.

The development and implementation of procedures on required absences from sensitive positions is just one element of an adequate control environment. Each banking organization should take all measures to establish appropriate policies, limits, and verification procedures for an effective overall risk-management system.

2010.9.2 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. To determine whether a critical assessment has been performed of a banking organization's significant areas and sensitive positions.
2. To ascertain that sound internal controls exist, including policies and procedures that provide assurances that employees in sensitive positions are absent from their duties for a minimum of two consecutive weeks per year.
3. To ascertain whether the banking organization has taken all measures to establish appropriate policies, limits, and verification procedures for an effective overall risk-management system.
4. To establish that the appropriate audit schedules and the audits include a review of minimum absence policies and procedures, including potential electronic access or other circumventing actions by employees.
2. Ascertain if employees assigned to sensitive positions are required to be absent for a minimum of two weeks per year while—
 - a. pending sensitive transactions are monitored while they clear, and
 - b. daily work is monitored and processed by another employee during the regularly assigned employee's absence.
3. Determine if required internal control procedures for minimum absences (for example, rotation of assignments, vacation or leave, or a combination of both) are being used in sensitive operations such as trading, trust, wire transfer, reconciliation, or other sensitive back-office responsibilities.
4. Ascertain if appropriate policies, limits, and verification procedures have been established and maintained for an effective overall risk-management system.
5. Determine whether the banking organization—
 - a. prohibits others from taking and carrying out instructions from the absent employees, and
 - b. prevents remote electronic access to systems and records involving sensitive transactions during the regularly assigned employee's required minimum two-week absence.
6. Ascertain that the banking organization documents waivers from the two-week minimum absence policies and procedures involving sensitive positions.
7. Determine that the appropriate audit schedules and the audits include a review of such procedures, including potential electronic access or other circumventing actions by employees.

2010.9.3 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Determine that a profile of high-risk areas and activities is performed on a regular periodic basis.

Internal loan review is an activity which provides management with information about the quality of loans and effectiveness of a banking organization's lending policies and procedures. The objectives of loan-review procedures are to identify, in a timely manner, existing or emerging credit-quality problems and to determine whether internal lending policies are being adhered to.

The size and complexity of a bank holding company will dictate the need for and structure of internal loan review. One-bank holding companies with no significant credit-extending nonbank subsidiaries will normally establish internal loan-review procedures within the subsidiary bank. In these cases, there is no need to evaluate the loan-review procedures during the inspection.

For larger multibank companies or those with significant credit-extending nonbank subsidiaries, internal loan review is usually centralized at the parent company level. In some cases, a centralized loan-review function could operate in the lead bank and cover all affiliates within the organization. However, since parent company directors and senior management are ultimately accountable for the organization's asset quality, an evaluation of the internal loan-review function should be conducted as part of the inspection process no matter where the operations are technically located within the corporate structure. Since a subsidiary bank's primary regulator will normally want to evaluate the loan-review process as it relates to the respective bank, a coordination of efforts would be appropriate. This should be handled on an ad hoc basis, as deemed necessary by the holding company's examiner-in-charge, to avoid unnecessary duplication of efforts without compromising the independence of the appraisal process.

Internal loan-review procedures may take various forms, from senior officers' review of junior-officer loans to the formation of an independent department staffed by loan-review analysts. An effective system will identify deteriorations in credits, loans that do not comply with written loan policies, and loans with technical exceptions.

The loan-review program should be delegated to a qualified and adequate staff. The review should be systematic in scope and frequency. All related extensions of credit should be identified and analyzed together. A minimum credit size should be established that allows for an efficient review while providing adequate cover-

age. The process should also tie problem loans or technical exceptions to the particular loan officer to allow senior management to evaluate individual performance. Loans should be reviewed shortly after origination to determine their initial quality, technical exceptions, and compliance with written loan policies. Reasonable frequency guidelines should be set for normal reviews, with problem credits receiving special and more frequent analysis. An effective loan-review procedure will incorporate an early warning system of "red flags," such as overdrafts, adverse published reports, and deteriorating financial statements. Loan officers should also be encouraged to inform the organization's internal loan-review unit of developing loan problems, and they should be discouraged from withholding problem loans or adverse information from the review process.

The loan-review process should be independent of the loan-approval function, with written findings reported to a board or senior management committee that is not directly involved in lending. Follow-up and monitoring of problem credits should be instituted. The loan officer should be responsible for reporting on any corrective actions taken. The maintenance of adequate internal controls within the lending process, in particular for loan review or credit audit, is critical for maintaining proper incentives for banking organization staff to be rigorous and disciplined in their credit-analysis and lending decisions. A banking organization's credit analyses, loan terms and structures, credit decisions, and internal rating assignments have historically been reviewed in detail by experienced and independent loan-review staff. Such loan reviews have provided both motivation for better credit discipline within an institution and greater comfort for examiners—and management—that internal policies are being followed and that the banking organization continues to adhere to sound lending practice.

For larger multibank organizations, loan-review procedures are usually centralized and administered at the parent level, with loan-review staff employed by the parent company. In some cases, a centralized loan-review function may operate in the lead bank, covering all other affiliates in the organization. The parent company directors and senior management are ultimately accountable for supervision of the entire organization's asset quality. Therefore, it

should be the System's responsibility to evaluate top management's loan-review policies and procedures as they relate to the subsidiaries, both bank and nonbank, no matter where the function is technically established within the corporate structure. The holding company examiner-in-charge should attempt to coordinate efforts and cooperate with the respective banks' primary supervisors to avoid unnecessary duplication, without compromising the independence of the appraisal process.

During favorable economic and financial markets, relatively low levels of problem loans and credit losses may increase pressure within banking organizations to reduce the resources committed to loan-review functions. These reductions may include a reduction in staff, more limited portfolio coverage, and less thorough reviews of individual loans. Undoubtedly, some useful efficiencies may be gained by reducing loan-review resources, but some banking organizations may reduce the scope and depth of loan-review activities beyond levels that are prudent over the longer horizon. If reduced too far, the integrity of the lending process and the discipline of identifying unrealistic assumptions and discerning problem loans in a timely fashion may deteriorate. This may be especially true when a large proportion of lenders may not have had direct lending experience during a credit cycle when there was an economic and financial market downturn. See SR-99-23.

If supervisors and examiners find that there are weaknesses in the internal loan-review function and in activities or other internal control and risk-management processes (for example, staff turnover, failure to commit sufficient resources, inadequate adherence to established internal controls, or inadequate training), such findings should be discussed with the senior management of the parent bank holding company or other management at a corporate-wide level and, if determined to be a major concern, presented as comments on the "Examiner's Comments and Matters Requiring Special Board Attention" core page. Findings that could adversely affect affiliated insured depository institutions should be conveyed to the primary federal or state supervisor of the insured institution. Those findings should also be considered when assigning supervisory ratings.

Shell one-bank holding companies will not have or need a loan-review program emanating from the parent company level. Loan review

will normally function within the subsidiary bank and be supervised by bank directors and management.

2010.10.1 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. Review the operations of the bank holding company to determine whether there is an internal loan-review program. If not, one should be implemented.
2. Determine whether the loan-review program is independent from the loan-approval function.
3. Determine if the loan-review staff is sufficiently qualified and whether its size is adequate.
4. Determine whether the scope and frequency of the loan-review procedure is adequate to ensure that problems are being identified.
5. Determine that findings from the loan-review process are being properly reported and receive adequate follow-up attention.

2010.10.2 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Review the holding company's operations to determine what types of internal loan-review procedures are being performed and whether an internal loan-review program exists.
2. If no internal loan-review program exists, determine whether the size, complexity, and financial condition of the organization warrants implementation of a formal loan-review process.
3. Review the organizational structure of the loan-review function to ensure its independence from the loan-approval processes.
4. Review the reporting process for internal loan-review findings to determine whether a director committee or independent senior management committee is being appropriately advised of the findings. Determine whether adequate follow-up procedures are in place.
5. Through loan reviews, transaction testing, and discussions with loan-review management, evaluate the quality, effectiveness and adequacy of the internal loan-review staff and internal controls in relation to the organization's size and complexity.
6. Review the operation of the loan-review process to identify the method for selecting loans and the manner in which they are analyzed and graded. Determine whether these procedures are adequate.

7. Determine if loan-review activities or other internal control and risk-management processes have been weakened by turnover of internal loan-review staff; a failure to commit sufficient resources; inadequate internal controls; inadequate training; or the absence of other adequate systems, resources, or controls. If such significant findings are found, discuss those concerns with senior management and report those findings on the core page 1, "Examiner's Comments and Matters Requiring Special Board Attention."
8. Determine what type of "early warning" system is in place and whether it is adequate.
9. Determine how the scope and frequency of the review procedure is established and whether this provides adequate coverage.

WHAT'S NEW IN THIS REVISED SECTION

Effective July 2012, this section has been revised to reference the Financial Crimes Enforcement Network's regulations and those of the Office of Foreign Assets Control, issued by the U.S. Department of the Treasury (31 C.F.R. 1020).

2010.11.1 OVERVIEW OF PRIVATE BANKING AND ITS ASSOCIATED ACTIVITIES

The role of bank regulators in supervising private-banking activities is (1) to evaluate management's ability to measure and control the risks associated with such activities and (2) to determine if the proper internal control and audit infrastructures are in place to support effective compliance with relevant laws and regulations. In this regard, the supervisors may determine that certain risks have not been identified or adequately managed by the institution, a potentially unsafe and unsound banking practice.

Private-banking functions may be performed in a specific department of a commercial bank or nonbank subsidiary of a commercial bank, a bank holding company (including a financial holding company), an Edge corporation or its foreign subsidiaries, a branch or agency of a foreign banking organization, or within multiple areas of an institution. Private banking may be the sole business of an institution. Regardless of how an institution is organized or where it is located, the results of the private-banking review should be reflected in the entity's overall supervisory assessment.¹

This section provides examiners with guidance for reviewing private-banking activities at all types and sizes of banking organizations, including financial institutions. It is intended to supplement, not replace, existing guidance on the inspection or examination of private-banking activities and to broaden the examiner's review of general risk-management policies and prac-

tices governing private-banking activities. In addition to providing an overview of private banking, the general types of customers, and the various products and services typically provided, the "Functional Review" subsection describes the critical functions that constitute a private-banking operation and identifies certain safe and sound banking practices. These critical functions are supervision and organization, risk management, fiduciary standards, operational controls, management information systems, audit, and compliance. Included in the risk-management portion is a discussion of the basic "customer-due-diligence" (CDD) principle that is the foundation for the safe and sound operation of a private-banking business. See the CDD rules at 31 C.F.R. 1020. The "Preparation for Inspection" subsection assists in defining the inspection scope and provides a list of core requests to be made in the first-day letter. Additional inspection and examination guidance can be found in this manual, the Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council's (FFIEC) *Bank Secrecy Act/Anti-Money Laundering (BSA/AML) Examination Manual*, the Federal Reserve System's *Trading and Capital-Markets Activities Manual*, and in the FFIEC's *Information Technology Examination Handbook*.

In reviewing specific functional and product-inspection procedures (as found in the private-banking activities module that is part of the framework for risk-focused supervision of large complex institutions), all aspects of the private-banking review should be coordinated with the rest of the inspection to eliminate unnecessary duplication of effort. Furthermore, this section has introduced the review of trust activities and fiduciary services, critical components of most private-banking operations, as part of the overall private-banking review. Although the product nature of these activities differs from that of products generated by other banking activities, such as lending and deposit taking, the functional components of private banking (supervision and organization, risk management, operational controls and management information systems, audit, compliance, and financial condition/business profile) should be reviewed across product lines.

Private banking offers the personal and discrete delivery of a wide variety of financial services and products to an affluent market, primarily to high net worth individuals and their

1. Throughout this section, the word institution will be used to mean all types of banking organizations, including bank holding companies, their bank and other financial institution subsidiaries, nonbank subsidiaries, and those entities authorized to operate under section 4(k) of the Bank Holding Company Act. Institution also includes branches and agencies of foreign banks and any other types of financial institutions and entities supervised by the Federal Reserve System. The term "board of directors" will be interchangeable with references to the "senior management" of branches and agencies of foreign banks.

corporate interests. A private-banking operation typically offers its customers an all-inclusive money-management relationship, including investment portfolio management, financial-planning advice, offshore facilities, custodial services, funds transfer, lending services, overdraft privileges, hold mail, letter-of-credit financing, and bill-paying services. As the affluent market grows, both in the United States and globally, competition to serve it is becoming more intense. Consequently, the private-banking marketplace includes banks, nonbanks, and other types of banking organizations and financial institutions. Private-banking products, services, technologies, and distribution channels are still evolving. A range of private-banking products and services may be offered to customers throughout an institution's global network of affiliated entities—including branches, subsidiaries, and representative offices—in many different regions of the world, including offshore secrecy jurisdictions.

Typically, private-banking customers are high net worth individuals or institutional investors who have minimum investible assets of \$1 million or more. Institutions often differentiate domestic from international private banking, and they may further segregate the international function on the basis of the geographic location of their international client base. International private-banking clients may be wealthy individuals who live in politically unstable nations and are seeking a safe haven for their capital. Therefore, obtaining detailed background information and documentation about the international client may be more difficult than it is for the domestic customer. Private-banking accounts may, for example, be opened in the name of an individual, a commercial business, a law firm, an investment adviser, a trust, a personal investment company (PIC), or an offshore mutual fund.

In 2001, the USA Patriot Act (the Patriot Act) established new and enhanced measures to prevent, detect, and prosecute money laundering and terrorist financing. In general, these measures were enacted through amendments to the Bank Secrecy Act (BSA). The measures directly affecting banking organizations are implemented primarily through regulations issued by the U.S. Department of the Treasury (31 C.F.R. 1020).² Section 326 of the Patriot Act (see the

BSA at 31 U.S.C. 5318(l)) requires financial institutions (such as banks, savings associations, trust companies, and credit unions) to have *customer identification programs* (CIPs), that is, programs to collect and maintain certain records and documentation on customers. Institutions are to develop and use identity verification procedures to ensure the identity of their customers. Bank holding companies, as a matter of safety and soundness, should take appropriate measures to ensure that their financial institution subsidiaries are in compliance with the customer identification program (CIP) rule.

The CIP rule (see 31 C.F.R. 1020.220 and 12 C.F.R. 326.8(b)) applies only to a bank, not to a bank holding company solely because it owns a bank. Also, a nonbank subsidiary of a bank holding company is not subject to the CIP rule for banks solely as a result of being affiliated with a bank in a holding company structure. Even though this rule is not applicable to bank holding companies and their nonbank subsidiaries (or to savings and loan holding companies and their non-savings association subsidiaries), bank holding companies should, as a matter of safety and soundness, take appropriate measures throughout the organization to ensure that each of their entities is in compliance with any applicable CIP rule. New accounts must receive appropriate due diligence, and a holding company should generally protect the consolidated organization from any risks associated with money laundering and financial crime. The bank holding company may still be subject to other CIP rules if it has ownership in a functionally regulated entity, for example, a securities broker-dealer. (See 31 C.F.R. 1023.220 and 1026.220)

The CIPs are to include measures to—

1. require that certain information be obtained at account opening (for individuals, the information would generally include their name, address, tax identification number, and date of birth);
2. verify the identity of new account holders within a reasonable time period;
3. ensure that a banking organization has a reasonable belief that it knows each customer's identity;
4. maintain records of the information used to verify a person's identity; and

2. For banking organizations, the regulation implementing the requirements of section 326 of the Patriot Act was jointly

issued by the U.S. Department of the Treasury, through the Financial Crimes Enforcement Network (FinCEN), and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and the National Credit Union Administration.

5. compare the names of new customers against government lists of known or suspected terrorists or terrorist organizations.

A customer identification program is an important component of a financial institution's overall anti-money-laundering and BSA compliance program.

The FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual* provides the interagency BSA examination procedures that should be used to evaluate banking organizations' compliance with the regulation. The scope of the examination or inspection can be tailored to the reliability of the banking organization's compliance-management system and to the level of risk that the organization assumes. Relevant interagency guidance (in a frequently-asked-question format) has been issued to address the customer identification program rules. (See SR-05-9.)

Private-banking accounts are usually generated on a referral basis. Every client of a private-banking operation is assigned a salesperson or marketer, commonly known as a relationship manager (RM), as the primary point of contact with the institution. The RM is generally charged with understanding and anticipating the needs of his or her wealthy clients, and then recommending services and products for them. The number of accounts an RM handles varies, depending on the portfolio size or net worth of the particular accounts. RMs strive to provide a high level of support, service, and investment opportunities to their clients and tend to maintain strong, long-term client relationships. Frequently, RMs take accounts with them to other private-banking institutions if they change employment. Historically, initial and ongoing due diligence of private-banking clients is not always well documented in the institution's files because of RM turnover and confidentiality concerns.

Clients may choose to delegate a great deal of authority and discretion over their financial affairs to RMs. Given the close relationship between clients and their account officers, an integral part of the inspection process is assessing the adequacy of managerial oversight of the nature and volume of transactions conducted within the private-banking department or with other departments of the financial institution, as well as determining the adequacy and integrity of the RM's procedures. Policy guidelines and management supervision should provide parameters for evaluating the appropriateness of all products, especially those involving market risk. Moreover, because of the discretion given to RMs, management should develop effective pro-

cedures to review the activity of client accounts in order to protect the client from any unauthorized activity. In addition, ongoing monitoring of account activity should be conducted to detect activity that is inconsistent with the client profile (for example, frequent or sizable unexplained transfers flowing through the account).

Finally, as clients develop a return-on-assets (ROA) outlook to enhance their returns, the use of leveraging and arbitrage is becoming more evident in the private-banking business. Examiners should be alert to the totality of the client relationship product by product, in light of increasing client awareness and use of derivatives, emerging-market products, foreign exchange, and margined accounts.

2010.11.1.1 Products and Services

2010.11.1.1.1 Personal Investment Companies, Offshore Trusts, and Token-Name Accounts

Private-banking services almost always involve a high level of confidentiality for clients and their account information. Consequently, it is not unusual for private bankers to help their clients achieve their financial-planning, estate-planning, and confidentiality goals through offshore vehicles such as personal investment companies (PICs), trusts, or more exotic arrangements, such as hedge fund partnerships. While these vehicles may be used for legitimate reasons, without careful scrutiny, they may camouflage illegal activities. Private bankers should be committed to using sound judgment and enforcing prudent banking practices, especially when they are assisting clients in establishing offshore vehicles or token-name accounts.

Through their global network of affiliated entities, private banks often form PICs for their clients. These "shell" companies, which are incorporated in offshore secrecy jurisdictions such as the Cayman Islands, Channel Islands, Bahamas, British Virgin Islands, and Netherlands Antilles, are formed to hold the customer's assets as well as offer confidentiality by opening accounts in the PIC's name. The "beneficial owners" of the shell corporations are typically foreign nationals. The banking institution should know and be able to document that it knows the beneficial owners of such corporations and that it has performed the appropriate due diligence to support these efforts. Emphasis should be placed on verifying the source or

origin of the customer's wealth. Similarly, offshore trusts established in these jurisdictions should identify grantors of the trusts and sources of the grantors' wealth. *Anonymous relationships or relationships in which the RM does not know and document the beneficial owner should not be permitted.*

PICs are typically passive personal investment vehicles. However, foreign nationals have established PICs as operating accounts for business entities they control in their home countries. Accordingly, financial institutions should use extra care when dealing with beneficial owners of PICs and associated trusts; these vehicles can be used to conceal illegal activities.

2010.11.1.1.2 Deposit-Taking Activities of Subsidiary Institutions

A client's private-banking relationship frequently begins with a deposit account and then expands into other products. In fact, many institutions require private-banking customers to establish a deposit account before maintaining any other accounts. Deposit accounts serve as conduits for a client's money flows. To distinguish private-banking accounts from retail accounts, institutions usually require significantly higher minimum account balances and assess higher fees. The private-banking function or institution should have account-opening procedures and documentation requirements that must be fulfilled before a deposit account can be opened. (These standards are described in detail in the "Functional Review" subsection.)

Most private banks offer a broad spectrum of deposit products, including multicurrency deposit accounts that are used by clients who engage in foreign-exchange, securities, and derivatives transactions. The client's transaction activity, such as wire transfers, check writing, and cash deposits and withdrawals, is conducted through deposit accounts (including current accounts). It is very important that the transaction activity into and out of these deposit accounts (including internal transfers between affiliated deposit accounts) be closely monitored for suspicious transactions that are inconsistent with the client's profile of usual transactions.

Suspicious transactions could warrant the filing of a Suspicious Activity Report (SAR). A bank holding company or any nonbank subsidiary thereof, or a foreign bank that is subject to the Bank Holding Company Act (or any non-

bank subsidiary of such a foreign bank operating in the United States), is required to file a SAR in accordance with the provision of section 208.62 of the Federal Reserve Board's Regulation H (12 C.F.R. 208.62) when suspicious transactions or activities are initially discovered and warrant or require reporting. See the reporting requirements discussed in subsection 2010.11.2.2.1.1 and the expanded examination procedures for private banking in the FFIEC's *BSA/AML Examination Manual*.

2010.11.1.1.3 Investment Management

In private banking, investment management usually consists of two types of accounts: (1) discretionary accounts in which portfolio managers make the investment decisions on the basis of recommendations from the bank's investment research resources and (2) nondiscretionary (investment advisory) accounts in which clients make their own investment decisions when conducting trades. For nondiscretionary clients, the banks typically offer investment recommendations subject to the client's written approval. Discretionary accounts consist of a mixture of instruments bearing varying degrees of market, credit, and liquidity risk that should be appropriate to the client's investment objectives and risk appetite. Both account types are governed under separate agreements between the client and the institution.

Unlike depository accounts, securities and other instruments held in the client's investment accounts are not reflected on the balance sheet of the institution because they belong to the client. These managed assets are usually accounted for on a separate ledger that is segregated according to the customer who owns the assets.

2010.11.1.1.4 Credit

Private-banking clients may request extensions of credit on either a secured or an unsecured basis. Loans backed by cash collateral or managed assets held by the private-banking function are quite common, especially in international private banking. Private-banking clients may pledge a wide range of their assets, including cash, mortgages, marketable securities, land, or buildings, to securitize their loans. Management should demonstrate an understanding of the purpose of the credit, the source of repayment, the loan tenor, and the collateral used in the financing. When lending to individuals with high net

worths, whether on a secured or an unsecured basis, the creditworthiness determination is bolstered by a thorough and well-structured customer-due-diligence process. If that process is not thorough, collateral derived from illicit activities may be subject to government forfeiture.

Borrowing mechanisms are sometimes established to afford nonresident-alien customers the ability to keep financial assets in the United States and to use such assets (via collateralized borrowing arrangements) to provide operating capital for businesses they own and operate in their home countries. Such arrangements enable these customers to keep the existence of these financial assets secret from their home-country authorities and others, while they continue to use the funds (via collateralized borrowings) to fund their businesses at home.

Private bankers need to maintain in the United States adequate CDD information on such nonresident-alien customers and their primary business interests. A well-documented CDD file may include information on the customer from “who’s who” and similar services, Internet research, foreign tax returns and financial statements, checks conducted by the Office of Foreign Assets Control (OFAC), and written and appropriately documented Call Reports prepared by the RM.

While these lending mechanisms may be used for legitimate reasons, management needs to determine whether the arrangements are being used primarily to obfuscate the beneficial ownership of collateral assets, making it difficult for the customer’s home-country government to identify who owns the assets. If so, management needs to further determine whether the practice varies from both the appropriate standards of international cooperation for transparency issues and with prudent banking practices, and if so, whether the institution is exposed to elevated legal risk.

2010.11.1.1.5 Payable-Through Accounts

Another product that may be available in private-banking operations is payable-through accounts (PTAs). PTAs are transaction deposit accounts through which U.S. banking entities (“payable-through banks”) extend check-writing privileges to the customers of a foreign bank. The foreign bank (“master account holder”) opens a master checking account with the U.S. bank and uses this account to provide its customers with access to the U.S. banking system. The master account is divided into

“subaccounts,” each in the name of one of the foreign bank’s customers. The foreign bank extends signature authority on its master account to its own customers, who may not be known to the U.S. bank. Consequently, the U.S. bank may have customers who have not been subject to the same account-opening requirements imposed on its U.S. account holders. These subaccount customers are able to write checks and make deposits at the U.S. banking entity. The number of subaccounts permitted under this arrangement may be virtually unlimited.

U.S. banking entities engage in PTAs primarily because they attract dollar deposits from the domestic market of their foreign correspondents without changing the primary bank-customer relationship; PTAs also provide substantial fee income. Generally, PTAs at U.S. banking entities have the following characteristics: they are carried on the U.S. banking entity’s books as a correspondent bank account, their transaction volume is high, checks passing through the account contain wording similar to “payable through XYZ bank,” and the signatures appearing on checks are not those of authorized officers of the foreign bank. See the expanded examination procedures for PTAs in the FFIEC’s *BSA/AML Examination Manual*.

2010.11.1.1.6 Personal Trust and Estates

In trust and estate accounts, an institution offers management services for a client’s assets. When dealing with trusts under will, or “testamentary trusts,” the institution may receive an estate appointment (executor) and a trustee appointment if the will provided for the trust from the probate. These accounts are fully funded at origination with no opportunity for an outside party to add to the account, and all activities are subject to review by the probate or surrogates’ court. On the other hand, with living trusts, or “grantor trusts,” the customer (grantor) may continually add to and, in some instances, has control over the corpus of the account. Trusts and estates require experienced attorneys, money managers, and generally well-rounded professionals to set up and maintain the accounts. In certain cases, bankers may need to manage a customer’s closely held business or sole proprietorship. In the case of offshore trust facilities, recent changes in U.S. law have imposed additional obligations on those banks

that function as trustees or corporate managers for offshore trusts and PICs.

A critical element in offering personal trust and estate services is the fiduciary responsibility of the institutions to their customers. This responsibility requires that institutions always act in the best interest of the clients pursuant to the trust documentation, perhaps even to the detriment of the bank. In these accounts, the bank is the fiduciary and the trust officer serves as a representative of the institution. Fiduciaries are held to higher standards of conduct than other bankers. Proper administration of trusts and estates includes strict controls over assets, prudent investment and management of assets, and meticulous recordkeeping. See the expanded procedures for trust and asset management services in the FFIEC's *BSA/AML Examination Manual*.

2010.11.1.1.7 Custody Services

Custodial services offered to private-banking customers include securities safekeeping, receipt and disbursement of dividends and interest, recordkeeping, and accounting. Custody relationships can be established in many ways, including by referrals from other departments in the bank or from outside investment advisers. The customer or a designated financial adviser retains full control of the investment management of the property subject to the custodianship. Sales and purchases of assets are made by instruction from the customer, and cash disbursements are prearranged or as instructed. Custody accounts involve no investment supervision and no discretion. However, the custodian may be responsible for certain losses if it fails to act properly according to the custody agreement. Therefore, procedures for proper administration should be established and reviewed.

An escrow account is a form of custody account in which the institution agrees to hold cash or securities as a middleman, or a third party. The customer, for example, an attorney or a travel agency, gives the institution funds to hold until the ultimate receiver of the funds "performs" in accordance with the written escrow agreement, at which time the institution releases the funds to the designated party.

2010.11.1.1.8 Funds Transfer

Funds transfer, another service offered by private-banking functions, may involve the transfer of funds between third parties as part of bill-paying and investment services on the basis of customer instructions. The adequacy of controls over funds-transfer instructions that are initiated electronically or telephonically is extremely important. Funds-transfer requests are quickly processed and, as required by law, funds-transfer personnel may have limited knowledge of the customers or the purpose of the transactions. Therefore, strong controls and adequate supervision over this area are critical. See section 4063.1 and 4125.1 of the *Commercial Bank Examination Manual*.

2010.11.1.1.9 Hold Mail, No Mail, and Electronic-Mail Only

Hold-mail, no-mail, or electronic-mail-only accounts are often provided to private-banking customers who elect to have bank statements and other documents maintained at the institution or e-mailed to them, rather than mailed to their residence. Agreements for hold-mail accounts should be in place, and the agreements should indicate that it was the customer's choice to have the statements retained at the bank and that the customer will pick up his or her mail at least annually. Variations of hold-mail services include delivery of mail to a prearranged location (such as another branch of the bank) by special courier or the bank's pouch system.

2010.11.1.1.10 Bill-Paying Services

Bill-paying services are often provided to private-banking customers for a fee. If this service is provided, an agreement between the bank and the customer should exist. Typically, a customer may request that the bank debit a deposit account for credit card bills, utilities, rent, mortgage payments, or other monthly consumer charges. In addition, the increased use of the Internet has given rise to the *electronic-mail-only account*, whereby customers elect to have statements, notices, etc., sent to them only by e-mail.

2010.11.2 FUNCTIONAL REVIEW

When discussing the functional aspects of a private-banking operation, *functional* refers to

managerial processes and procedures, such as reporting lines, quality of supervision (including involvement of the board of directors), information flows, policies and procedures, risk-management policies and methodologies, segregation of duties, management information systems, operational controls (including BSA/AML monitoring), and audit coverage. The examiner should be able to draw sound conclusions about the quality and culture of management and stated private-banking policies after reviewing the functional areas described below. Specifically, the institution's risk-identification process and risk appetite should be carefully defined and assessed. Additionally, the effectiveness of the overall control environment maintained by management should be evaluated by an internal or external audit. The effectiveness of the following functional areas is critical to any private-banking operation, regardless of its size or product offerings.

2010.11.2.1 Supervision and Organization

As part of the examiner's appraisal of an organization, the quality of supervision of private-banking activities is evaluated. The appraisal of management covers the full range of functions and activities related to the operation of the private bank. The discharge of responsibilities by bank directors should be effected through an organizational plan that accommodates the volume and business services handled, local business practices and the bank's competition, and the growth and development of the institution's private-banking business. Organizational planning is the joint responsibility of senior bank and private-bank management, should be integrated with the long-range plan for the institution, and should be consistent with any enterprise-wide risk-management program.

Both the directors and management have important roles in formulating policies and establishing programs for private-banking products, operations, internal controls, and audits. However, management alone must implement policies and programs within the organizational framework instituted by the board of directors.

2010.11.2.2 Risk Management

Sound risk-management processes and strong internal controls are critical to safe and sound banking generally and to private-banking activities in particular. Management's role in ensuring

the integrity of these processes has become increasingly important as new products and technologies are introduced. Similarly, the client-selection, documentation, approval, and account-monitoring processes should adhere to sound and well-identified practices.

The quality of risk-management practices and internal controls is given significant weight in the evaluation of management and the overall condition of private-banking operations. A bank's failure to establish and maintain a risk-management framework that effectively identifies, measures, monitors, and controls the risks associated with products and services should be considered unsafe and unsound conduct. Furthermore, well-defined management practices should indicate the types of clients that the institution will and will not accept and should establish multiple and segregated levels of authorization for accepting new clients. Institutions that follow sound practices will be better positioned to design and deliver products and services that match their clients' legitimate needs, while reducing the likelihood that unsuitable clients might enter their client account base. Deficiencies noted in this area are weighted in context of the relative risk they pose to the institution and are appropriately reflected in the appraisal of management.

The private-banking function is exposed to a number of risks, including reputational, fiduciary, legal, credit, operational, and market. A brief description of some of the different types of risks follows:

1. *Reputational risk* is the potential that negative publicity regarding an institution's business practices and clients, whether true or not, could cause a decline in the customer base, costly litigation, or revenue reductions.
2. *Fiduciary risk* refers to the risk of loss due to the institution's failure to exercise loyalty; safeguard assets; and, for trusts, to use assets productively and according to the appropriate standard of care. This risk generally exists in an institution to the extent that it exercises discretion in managing assets on behalf of a customer.
3. *Legal risk* arises from the potential of unenforceable contracts, client lawsuits, or adverse judgments to disrupt or otherwise negatively affect the operations or condition of a banking organization. One key dimension of legal risk is supervisory action that could result in costly fines or other punitive

measures being levied against an institution for compliance breakdowns.

4. *Credit risk* arises from the potential that a borrower or counterparty will fail to perform on an obligation.
5. *Operational risk* arises from the potential that inadequate information systems, operational problems, breaches in internal controls, fraud, or unforeseen catastrophes will result in unexpected losses.

Although effective management of all of the above risks is critical for an institution, certain aspects of reputational, legal, and fiduciary risks are often unique to a private-banking function. In this regard, the following customer-due-diligence policies and practices are essential in the management of reputational and legal risks in the private-banking functions. (In addition, sound fiduciary practices and conflicts-of-interest issues that a private-banking operation may face in acting as fiduciary are described in the subsection on fiduciary standards.)

2010.11.2.2.1 Customer-Due-Diligence Policy and Procedures

Sound customer-due-diligence (CDD) policies and procedures are essential to minimize the risks inherent in private banking. The policies and procedures should clearly describe the target client base in terms such as “minimum investable net worth” and “types of products sought,” as well as specifically indicate the type of clientele the institution will or will not accept. Policies and procedures should be designed to ensure that effective due diligence is performed on all potential clients, that client files are bolstered with additional CDD information on an ongoing basis, and that activity in client accounts is monitored for transactions that are inconsistent with the client profile and may constitute unlawful activities, such as money laundering. The client’s identity, background, and the nature of his or her transactions should be documented and approved by the back office before opening an account or accepting client monies. Certain high-risk clients like foreign politicians or money exchange houses should have additional documentation to mitigate their higher risk. See 31 C.F.R. 1020, subpart F, for due diligence rules.

Money laundering is associated with a broad range of illicit activities: the ultimate intention

is to disguise the money’s true source—from the initial placement of illegally derived cash proceeds to the layers of financial transactions that disguise the audit trail—and make the funds appear legitimate. Under U.S. money-laundering statutes, a bank employee can be held personally liable if he or she is deemed to engage in “willful blindness.” This condition occurs when the employee fails to make reasonable inquiries to satisfy suspicions about client account activities.

Since the key element of an effective CDD policy is a comprehensive knowledge of the client, the bank’s policies and procedures should clearly reflect the controls needed to ensure the policy is fully implemented. CDD policies should clearly delineate the accountability and authority for opening accounts and for determining if effective CDD practices have been performed on each client. In addition, policies should delineate documentation standards and accountability for gathering client information from referrals among departments or areas within the institution as well as from accounts brought to the institution by new RMs.

In carrying out prudent CDD practices on potential private-banking customers, management should document efforts to obtain and corroborate critical background information. Private-banking employees abroad often have local contacts who can assist in corroborating information received from the customer. The information listed below should be corroborated by a reliable, independent source, when possible:

1. The customer’s current address and telephone number for his or her primary residence, which should be corroborated at regular intervals, can be verified through a variety of methods, such as—
 - a. visiting the residence, office, factory, or farm (with the RM recording the results of the visit or conversations in a memorandum);
 - b. checking the information against the telephone directory; the client’s residence, as indicated on his or her national ID card; a mortgage or bank statement or utility or property tax bill; or the electoral or tax rolls;
 - c. obtaining a reference from the client’s government or known employer or from another bank;
 - d. checking with a credit bureau or professional corroboration organization; or
 - e. any other method verified by the RM.
2. Sufficient business information about the

customer should be gathered so that the RM understands the profile of the customer's commercial transactions. This information should include a description of the nature of the customer's business operations or means of generating income, primary trade or business areas, and major clients and their geographic locations, as well as the primary business address and telephone number. These items can be obtained through a combination of any of the following sources:

- a. a visit to the office, factory, or farm
 - b. a reliable third party who has a business relationship with the customer
 - c. financial statements
 - d. Dun and Bradstreet reports
 - e. newspaper or magazine articles
 - f. Lexis/Nexis reports on the customer or customer's business
 - g. "Who's Who" reports from the home country
 - h. private investigations
3. Although it is often not possible to get proof of a client's wealth, an RM can use his or her good judgment to derive a reasonable estimate of the individual's net worth.
4. As part of the ongoing CDD process, the RM should document in memos or "call reports" the substance of discussions that take place during frequent visits with the client. Additional information about a client's wealth, business, or other interests provides insight into potential marketing opportunities for the RM and the bank, and updates and strengthens the CDD profile.

As a rule, most private banks make it a policy not to accept walk-in clients. If an exception is made, procedures for the necessary documentation and approvals supporting the exception should be in place. Similarly, other exceptions to policy and procedures should readily identify the specific exception and the required due-diligence and approval process for overriding existing procedures.

In most instances, all CDD information and documentation should be maintained and available for examination and inspection at the location where the account is located or where the financial services are rendered. If the bank maintains centralized customer files in locations other than where the account is located or the financial services are rendered, complete customer information, identification, and documentation must be made available at the location where the account is located or where the financial services are rendered within 48 hours of a Federal Reserve examiner's request. Off-site stor-

age of CDD information will be allowed only if the bank has adopted, as part of its customer-due-diligence program, specific procedures designed to ensure that (1) the accounts are subject to ongoing Office of Foreign Assets Control screening that is equivalent to the screening afforded other accounts, (2) the accounts are subject to the same degree of review for suspicious activity, and (3) the bank demonstrates that the appropriate review of the information and documentation is being performed by personnel at the offshore location.

CDD procedures should be no different when the institution deals with a financial adviser or other type of intermediary acting on behalf of a client. To perform its CDD responsibilities when dealing with a financial adviser, the institution should identify the beneficial owner of the account (usually the intermediary's client, but in rare cases, it is the intermediary itself) and perform its CDD analysis with respect to that beneficial owner. The imposition of an intermediary between the institution and counterparty should not lessen the institution's CDD responsibilities.

The purpose of all private-banking relationships should also be readily identified. Incoming customer funds may be used for various purposes, such as establishing deposit accounts, funding investments, or establishing trusts. The bank's CDD procedures should allow for the collection of sufficient information to develop a transaction or client profile for each customer, which will be used in analyzing client transactions. Internal systems should be developed for monitoring and identifying transactions that may be inconsistent with the transaction or client profile for a customer and which may thus constitute suspicious activity.

2010.11.2.2.1.1 Suspicious Activity Reports

The proper and timely filing of Suspicious Activity Reports (SARs) is an important component of a bank's CDD program. Since 1996, the federal financial institution supervisory agencies and the Department of the Treasury's Financial Crimes Enforcement Network (FinCEN) have required banking organizations to report known or suspected violations of law as well as suspicious transactions on a SAR. See the Board's SAR regulation (Regulation H, section 208.62 [12 C.F.R. 208.62] and Regulation Y, section

225.4(f) [12 C.F.R. 225.4(f)]).³ Law enforcement agencies use the information reported on the form to initiate investigations, and Federal Reserve staff use the SAR information in their examination and oversight of supervised institutions.

A member bank and a BHC are required to file a SAR with the appropriate federal law enforcement agencies and the Department of the Treasury. A SAR must be prepared in accordance with the form's instructions. The completed SAR is to be sent to FinCEN when an institution detects—

1. insider abuse involving any amount;
2. violations aggregating \$5,000 or more in which a suspect can be identified;
3. violations aggregating \$25,000 or more regardless of a potential suspect; or
4. transactions aggregating \$5,000 or more that involve potential money laundering or violations of the Bank Secrecy Act.

When a SAR is filed, the management of a member bank must promptly notify its board of directors or a committee thereof.

A SAR must be filed within 30 calendar days after the date of initial detection of the facts that may constitute a basis for filing a SAR. If no suspect was identified on the date of detection of the incident requiring the filing, a member bank may delay filing a SAR for an additional 30 calendar days in order to identify the suspect. Reporting may not be delayed more than 60 calendar days after the date of initial detection of a reportable transaction. In situations involving violations requiring immediate attention, such as when a reportable violation is ongoing, the financial institution is required to immediately notify an appropriate law enforcement authority and the Board by telephone, in addition to its timely filing of a SAR.

A banking organization's internal systems for capturing suspicious activities should provide essential information about the nature and volume of activities passing through customer accounts. Any information suggesting that suspicious activity has occurred should be pursued, and, if an explanation is not forthcoming, the

matter should be reported to banking organization's management. Examiners should ensure that the institution's approach to SARs is proactive and that well-established procedures cover the SAR process. Accountability should exist within the organization for the analysis and follow-up of internally identified suspicious activity; this analysis should conclude with a decision on the appropriateness of filing a SAR. See the core procedures concerning suspicious-activity-reporting requirements in the FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual*.

2010.11.2.2.2 Credit-Underwriting Standards

The underwriting standards for private-banking loans to high net worth individuals should be consistent with prudent lending standards. The same credit policies and procedures that are applicable to any other type of lending arrangement should extend to these loans. At a minimum, sound policies and procedures should address the following: all approved credit products and services offered by the institution, lending limits, acceptable forms of collateral, geographic and other limitations, conditions under which credit is granted, repayment terms, maximum tenor, loan authority, collections and charge-offs, and prohibition against capitalization of interest.

An extension of credit based solely on collateral, even if the collateral is cash, does not ensure repayment. While the collateral enhances the bank's position, it should not substitute for regular credit analyses and prudent lending practices. If collateral is derived from illegal activities, it is subject to forfeiture through the seizure of assets by a government agency. The bank should perform its due diligence by adequately and reasonably ascertaining and documenting that the funds of its private-banking customers were derived from legitimate means. Banks should also verify that the use of the loan proceeds is for legitimate purposes.

In addition, bank policies should explicitly describe the terms under which "margin loans," loans collateralized by securities, are made and should ensure that they conform to applicable regulations. Management should review and approve daily MIS reports. The risk of market deterioration in the value of the underlying collateral may subject the lender to loss if the collateral must be liquidated to repay the loan. In the event of a "margin call," any shortage should be paid for promptly by the customer

3. The Board's SAR rules apply to state member banks, bank holding companies and their nonbank subsidiaries that do not report on a different SAR form (for example, broker-dealers), Edge and agreement corporations, and the U.S. branches and agencies of foreign banks supervised by the Federal Reserve.

from other sources pursuant to the terms of the margin agreement.

In addition, policies should address the acceptance of collateral held at another location, such as an affiliated entity, but pledged to the private-banking function. Under these circumstances, management of the private-banking function should, at a minimum, receive frequent reports detailing the collateral type and current valuation. In addition, management of the private-banking function should be informed of any changes or substitutions in collateral.

2010.11.2.3 Fiduciary Standards

Fiduciary risk is managed through the maintenance of an effective and accountable committee structure; retention of technically proficient staff; and development of effective policies, procedures, and controls. In managing its fiduciary risk, the bank must ensure that it carries out the following fiduciary duties:

1. *Duty of loyalty.* Trustees are obligated to make all decisions based exclusively on the best interests of trust customers. Except as permitted by law, trustees cannot place themselves in a position in which their interests might conflict with those of the trust beneficiaries.
2. *Avoidance of conflicts of interest.* Conflicts of interest arise in any transaction in which the fiduciary simultaneously represents the interests of multiple parties (including its own interests) that may be adverse to one another. Institutions should have detailed policies and procedures regarding potential conflicts of interest. All potential conflicts identified should be brought to the attention of management and the trust committee, with appropriate action taken. Conflicts of interest may arise throughout an institution. Care should be taken by fiduciary business lines, in particular, to manage conflicts of interest between fiduciary business lines and other business lines (including other fiduciary business lines). Consequently, management throughout the institution should receive training in these matters. For more information on the supervision of fiduciary activities, see section 3120.0 in this manual and section 4200.0 in the *Commercial Bank Examination Manual*.
3. *Duty to prudently manage discretionary trust and agency assets.* Since 1994, the majority of states have adopted laws concerning the prudent investor rule (PIR) with respect to

the investment of funds in a fiduciary capacity. PIR is a standard of review that imposes an obligation to prudently manage the portfolio as a whole, focusing on the process of portfolio management, rather than on the outcome of individual investment decisions. Although this rule only governs trusts, the standard is traditionally applied to all accounts for which the institution is managing funds.

2010.11.2.4 Operational Controls

To minimize any operational risks associated with private-banking activities, management is responsible for establishing an effective internal control infrastructure and reliable management information systems. Critical operational controls over any private-banking activity include the establishment of written policies and procedures, segregation of duties, and comprehensive management reporting. Throughout this section, specific guidelines and inspection procedures for assessing internal controls over different private-banking activities are provided. Listed below are some of those guidelines that cover specific private-banking services.

2010.11.2.4.1 Segregation of Duties

Banking organizations should have guidelines on the segregation of employees' duties in order to prevent the unauthorized waiver of documentation requirements, poorly documented referrals, and overlooked suspicious activities. Independent oversight by the back office helps to ensure compliance with account-opening procedures and CDD documentation. Control-conscious institutions may use independent units, such as compliance, risk management, or senior management, to fill this function in lieu of the back office. The audit and compliance functions of the private-banking entity should be similarly independent so that they can operate autonomously from line management.

2010.11.2.4.2 Inactive and Dormant Accounts

Management should be aware that banking laws in most states prohibit banks from offering services that allow deposit accounts to be inactive

for prolonged periods of time (generally, 12 or more months with no externally generated account-balance activity). These regulations are based on the presumption that inactive and dormant accounts may be subject to manipulation and abuse by insiders. Policies and procedures should delineate when inactivity occurs and when inactive accounts should be converted to dormant status. Effective controls over dormant accounts should include a specified time between the last customer-originated activity and its classification as dormant, the segregation of signature cards for dormant accounts, dual control of records, and the blocking of the account so that entries cannot be posted to the account without review by more than one member of senior management.

2010.11.2.4.3 Pass-Through Accounts and Omnibus Accounts

Pass-through accounts (PTAs) extend checking-account privileges to the customers of a foreign bank; several risks are involved in providing these accounts. In particular, if the U.S. banking entity does not exercise the same due diligence and customer vetting for PTAs as it does for domestic account relationships, the use of PTAs may facilitate unsafe and unsound banking practices or illegal activities, including money laundering. Additionally, if accounts at U.S. banking entities are used for illegal purposes, the entities could be exposed to reputational risk and risk of financial loss as a result of asset seizures and forfeitures brought by law enforcement authorities. It is recommended that U.S. banking entities terminate a payable-through arrangement with a foreign bank in situations in which (1) adequate information about the ultimate users of PTAs cannot be obtained, (2) the foreign bank cannot be relied on to identify and monitor the transactions of its own customers, or (3) the U.S. banking entity is unable to ensure that its payable-through accounts are not being used for money laundering or other illicit purposes.

Omnibus, or general clearing, accounts may also exist in the private-banking system. They may be used to accommodate client funds before an account opening to expedite a new relationship, or they may fund products such as mutual funds in which client deposit accounts may not be required. However, these accounts could circumvent an audit trail of client transac-

tions. Examiners should carefully review a bank's use of such accounts and the adequacy of its controls on their appropriate use. Generally, client monies should flow through client deposit accounts, which should function as the sole conduit and paper trail for client transactions.

2010.11.2.4.4 Hold-Mail, No-Mail, and E-Mail-Only Controls

Controls over hold-mail, no-mail, and e-mail-only accounts are critical because the clients have relinquished their ability to detect unauthorized transactions in their accounts in a timely manner. Accounts with high volume or significant losses warrant further inquiry. Hold-mail, no-mail, and e-mail-only account operations should ensure that client accounts are subject to dual control and are reviewed by an independent party.

2010.11.2.4.5 Funds Transfer—Tracking Transaction Flows

One way that institutions can improve their customer knowledge is by tracking the transaction flows into and out of customer accounts and payable-through subaccounts. Tracking should include funds-transfer activities. Policies and procedures to detect unusual or suspicious activities should identify the types of activities that would prompt staff to investigate the customer's activities and should provide guidance on the appropriate action required for suspicious activity. The following is a checklist to guide bank personnel in identifying some potential abuses:

1. indications of frequent overrides of established approval authority or other internal controls
2. intentional circumvention of approval authority by splitting transactions
3. wire transfers to and from known secrecy jurisdictions
4. frequent or large wire transfers for persons who have no account relationship with the bank, or funds being transferred into and out of an omnibus or general clearing account instead of the client's deposit account
5. wire transfers involving cash amounts in excess of \$10,000
6. inadequate control of password access
7. customer complaints or frequent error conditions

2010.11.2.4.6 Custody—Detection of “Free Riding”

Custody departments should monitor account activity to detect instances of “free-riding,” the practice of offering the purchase of securities without sufficient capital and then using the proceeds of the sale of the same securities to cover the initial purchase. Free-riding poses significant risk to the institution and typically occurs without the bank’s prior knowledge. Free-riding also violates margin rules (Regulations T, U, and X) governing the extension of credit in connection with securities transactions. (See SR-93-13 and section 2187.0.)

2010.11.2.5 Management Information Systems

Management information systems (MIS) should accumulate, interpret, and communicate information on (1) the private-banking assets under management, (2) profitability, (3) business and transaction activities, and (4) inherent risks. The form and content of MIS for private-banking activities will be a function of the size and complexity of the private-banking organization. Accurate, informative, and timely reports that perform the following functions may be prepared and reviewed by RMs and senior management:

1. aggregate the assets under management according to customer, product or service, geographic area, and business unit
2. attribute revenue according to customer and product type
3. identify customer accounts that are related to or affiliated with one another through common ownership or common control
4. identify and aggregate customer accounts by source of referral
5. identify beneficial ownership of trust, PIC, and similar accounts

To monitor and report transaction activity and to detect suspicious transactions, management reports may be developed to—

1. monitor a specific transaction criterion, such as a minimum dollar amount or volume or activity level;
2. monitor a certain type of transaction, such as one with a particular pattern;
3. monitor individual customer accounts for variations from established transaction and activity profiles based on what is usual or

- expected for that customer; and
4. monitor specific transactions for BSA and SAR compliance.

In addition, reports prepared for private-banking customers should be accurate, timely, and informative. Regular reports and statements prepared for private-banking customers should adequately and accurately describe the application of their funds and should detail all transactions and activity that pertain to the customers’ accounts.

Furthermore, MIS and technology play a role in building new and more direct channels of information between the institution and its private-banking customers. Active and sophisticated customers are increasing their demand for data relevant to their investment needs, which is fostering the creation of online information services. Online information can satisfy customers’ desire for convenience, real-time access to information, and a seamless delivery of information.

2010.11.2.6 Audit

An effective audit function is vital to ensuring the strength of a private bank’s internal controls. As a matter of practice, internal and external auditors should be independently verifying and confirming that the framework of internal controls is being maintained and operated in a manner that adequately addresses the risks associated with the activities of the organization. Critical elements of an effective internal audit function are the strong qualifications and expertise of the internal audit staff and a sound risk-assessment process for determining the scope and frequency of specific audits. The audit process should be risk-focused and should ultimately determine the risk rating of business lines and client CDD procedures. Compliance with CDD policies and procedures and the detailed testing of files for CDD documentation are also key elements of the audit function. Finally, examiners should review and evaluate management’s responsiveness to criticisms by the audit function.

2010.11.2.7 Compliance

The responsibility for ensuring effective compliance with relevant laws and regulations may

vary among different forms of institutions, depending on their size, complexity, and availability of resources. Some institutions may have a distinct compliance department with the centralized role of ensuring compliance institution-wide, including private-banking activities. This arrangement is strongly preferable to a situation in which an institution delegates compliance to specific functions, which may result in the management of private-banking operations being responsible for its own internal review. Compliance has a critical role in monitoring private-banking activities; the function should be independent of line management. In addition to ensuring compliance with various laws and regulations such as the Bank Secrecy Act and those promulgated by the Office of Foreign Assets Control, compliance may perform its own internal investigations and due diligence on employees, customers, and third parties with whom the bank has contracted in a consulting or referral capacity and whose behavior, activities, and transactions appear to be unusual or suspicious. Institutions may also find it beneficial for compliance to review and authorize account-opening documentation and CDD adequacy for new accounts. The role of compliance is a control function, but it should not be a substitute for regular and frequent internal audit coverage of the private-banking function. Following is a description of certain regulations that may be monitored by the compliance function.

2010.11.2.7.1 Office of Foreign Assets Control

The Office of Foreign Assets Control (OFAC) of the U.S. Department of the Treasury administers and enforces economic and trade sanctions based on U.S. foreign policy and national security goals. Sanctions are imposed against targeted foreign countries, terrorists, international narcotics traffickers, and those engaged in activities related to the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction. See 31 C.F.R. subtitle B, chapter V, part 501. OFAC acts under presidential wartime and national emergency powers, as well as under authority granted by specific legislation, to impose controls on transactions and freeze foreign assets under U.S. jurisdiction. Many of the sanctions are based on United Nations and other international mandates, are multilateral in scope, and involve close cooperation with allied governments. Under the Interna-

tional Emergency Economic Powers Act, the President can impose sanctions, such as trade embargoes, the freezing of assets, and import surcharges, on certain foreign countries and the “specially designated nationals” of those countries.

A “specially designated national” is a person or entity who acts on behalf of one of the countries under economic sanction by the United States. Dealing with such nationals is prohibited. Moreover, their assets or accounts in the United States are frozen. In certain cases, the Treasury Department can issue a license to a designated national. This license can then be presented by the customer to the institution, allowing the institution to debit his or her account. The license can be either general or specific.

OFAC screening may be difficult when transactions are conducted through PICs, token names, numbered accounts, or other vehicles that shield true identities. Management must ensure that accounts maintained in a name other than that of the beneficial owner are subject to the same level of filtering for OFAC specially designated nationals and blocked foreign countries as other accounts. That is, the OFAC screening process must include the account’s beneficial ownership as well as the official account name.

Any violation of regulations implementing designated national sanctions subjects the violator to criminal prosecution, including prison sentences and fines to corporations and individuals, per incident. Any funds frozen because of OFAC orders should be placed in a blocked account. Release of those funds cannot occur without a license from the Treasury Department.

2010.11.2.7.2 Bank Secrecy Act

Guidelines for compliance with the Bank Secrecy Act (BSA) can be found in the FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual*. See also the question-and-answer format interpretations (SR-05-9) of the U.S. Department of the Treasury’s regulation (31 C.F.R. 1010) for banking organizations, which is based on section 326 of the Patriot Act. In addition, the procedures for conducting BSA examinations of foreign offices of U.S. banks are detailed in the FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual*. The SAR filing requirements for nonbank subsidiaries of bank holding companies and state member banks are also set forth in SR-10-8.

2010.11.3 PREPARATION FOR INSPECTION

The following subsections provide examiners with guidance on preparing for the on-site inspection of private-banking operations, including determination of the inspection scope and drafting of the first-day-letter questionnaire that is provided to the institution.

2010.11.3.1 Pre-Inspection Review

To prepare the examiners for their assignments and to determine the appropriate staffing and scope of the inspection, the following guidelines should be followed during the pre-inspection planning process:

1. Review the prior report of inspection and workpapers for the inspection scope; structure and type of private-banking activities conducted; and findings, conclusions, and recommendations of the prior inspection. The prior inspection report and inspection plan should also provide insight to key contacts at the institution and to the time frame of the prior private-banking review.
2. Obtain relevant correspondence sent since the prior inspection, such as management's response to the report of inspection, any applications submitted to the Federal Reserve, and any supervisory action.
3. Review press releases and published news stories about the institution and its private-banking activities.
4. Review internal and external audit reports and any internal risk assessments performed by the institution on its private-banking activities. Such reports should include an assessment of the internal controls and risk profile of the private-banking function.
5. Contact the institution's management to ascertain what changes have occurred since the last inspection or are planned in the near future. For example, examiners should determine if there have been changes to the strategic plan; senior management; or the level and type of private-banking activities, products, and services offered. If there is no mention of private banking in the prior inspection report, management should be asked at this time if they have commenced or plan to commence any private-banking activities.
6. Follow these inspection procedures and also consider the core examination procedures in the FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual* in order to establish the base scope for the

inspection of private-banking activities. Review and follow the expanded procedures for private banking and any other expanded procedures that are deemed necessary.

2010.11.3.2 Inspection Staffing and Scope

Once the inspection scope has been established and before beginning the new inspection, the examiner-in-charge and key administrators of the inspection team should meet to discuss the private-banking inspection scope, the assignments of the functional areas of private banking, and the supplemental reviews of specific private-banking products and services. If the bank's business lines and services overlap and if its customer base and personnel are shared throughout the organization, examiners may be forced to go beyond a rudimentary review of private-banking operations. They will probably need to focus on the policies, practices, and risks within the different divisions of a particular institution and throughout the institution's global network of affiliated entities.

2010.11.3.3 Reflection of Organizational Structure

The review of private-banking activities should be conducted on the basis of the bank holding company's organizational structure. These structures may vary considerably depending on the size and sophistication of the institution, its country of origin and the other geographic markets in which it competes, and the objectives and strategies of its management and board of directors. To the extent possible, examiners should understand the level of consolidated private-banking activities an institution conducts in the United States and abroad. This broad view is needed to maintain the "big picture" impact of private banking for a particular institution.

For bank holding company inspections, examiners must consider the provisions of the Gramm-Leach Bliley Act, which amended section 5(c) of the Bank Holding Company Act, that concern examinations and inspections. In particular, examiners must adhere to those statutory provisions that pertain to the inspections of bank holding company nonbank subsidiaries that

are supervised by functional regulators. See section 1040.0.

2010.11.3.4 Risk-Focused Approach

Examiners reviewing the private-banking operations should implement the risk-focused inspection approach. The exam scope and degree of testing of private-banking practices should reflect the degree of risk assumed, prior exam findings on the implementation of policies and procedures, the effectiveness of controls, and an assessment of the adequacy of the internal audit and compliance functions. If initial inquiries into the institution's internal audit and other assessment practices raise doubts about the internal system's effectiveness, expanded analysis and review are required—and examiners should perform more transaction testing. Examiners will usually need to follow the core examination procedures in the FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual*, as well as the expanded procedures for private banking. Other expanded procedures should be followed if circumstances dictate.

2010.11.3.5 First-Day Letter

As part of the inspection preparation, examiners should customize the first-day-letter questionnaire to reflect the structure and type of private-banking activities of the institution and the scope of the exam. The following is a list of requests regarding private banking that examiners should consider including in the first-day letter. Responses to these items should be reviewed in conjunction with responses to the BSA, fiduciary, audit, and internal control inquiries:

1. organizational chart for the private bank on both a functional and legal-entity basis
2. business or strategic plan
3. income and expense statements for the prior fiscal year and current year to date, with projections for the remainder of the current and the next fiscal year, and income by product division and marketing region
4. balance-sheet and total assets under management (list the most active and profitable accounts by type, customer domicile, and responsible account officer)

5. most recent audits for private-banking activities
6. copies of audit committee minutes
7. copy of the CDD and SAR policies and procedures
8. list of all new business initiatives introduced last year and this year, relevant new-product-approval documentation that addresses the evaluation of the unique characteristics and risk associated with the new activity or product, and an assessment of the risk-management oversight and control infrastructures in place to manage the risks
9. list of all accounts in which an intermediary is acting on behalf of clients of the private bank, for example, as financial advisers or money managers
10. explanation of the methodology for following up on outstanding account documentation and a sample report
11. description of the method for aggregating client holdings and activities across business units throughout the organization
12. explanation of how related accounts, such as common control and family link, are identified
13. name of a contact person for information on compensation, training, and recruiting programs for relationship managers
14. list of all personal investment company accounts
15. list of reports that senior management receives regularly on private-banking activities
16. description and sample of the management information reports that monitor account activity
17. description of how senior management monitors compliance with global policies for worldwide operations, particularly for offices operating in secrecy jurisdictions
18. appropriate additional items from the core and expanded procedures for private banking, as set forth in the FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual*, as well as any other items from the expanded procedures that are needed to gauge the adequacy of the BSA/AML program for private-banking activities.

2010.11.4 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. To determine if the policies, practices, procedures, and internal controls regarding private-banking activities are adequate for the risks involved.
2. To determine if the institution's officers and

employees are operating in conformance with established guidelines for conducting private-banking activities.

3. To assess the financial condition and income-generation results of the private-banking activities.
4. To determine the scope and adequacy of the audit function for private-banking activities.
5. To determine compliance with applicable laws and regulations for private banking.
6. To initiate corrective action when policies, practices, procedures, or internal controls are deficient, or when violations of laws or regulations are found.

2010.11.5 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

The examiner-in-charge should supplement the following procedures, as appropriate, with the examination procedures for private banking, as set forth in the FFIEC *BSA/AML Examination Manual*.

2010.11.5.1 Private-Banking Pre-Inspection Procedures

1. As the examiner-in-charge, conduct a meeting with the lead members of the private-banking inspection team and discuss—
 - a. the private-banking inspection scope (*The inspection may need to extend beyond a rudimentary review of private-banking operations if the institution's business lines and services overlap and if its customer base and personnel are shared throughout the organization. Examiners will probably need to focus on the policies, practices, and risks within the different divisions of each particular institution and throughout each institution's global network of affiliated entities.*);
 - b. examiner assignments of the functional areas of private banking; and
 - c. the supplemental reviews of specific private-banking products and services.
2. Review the prior report of inspection and the previous inspection workpapers; description of the inspection scope; structure and type of private-banking activities conducted; and findings, conclusions, and recommendations of the prior inspection. The prior inspection report and inspection plan should also provide information and insight on key contacts at the institution and on the time frame of the prior private-banking review.
3. Review relevant correspondence exchanged

since the prior inspection, such as management's response to the report of inspection, any applications submitted to the Federal Reserve, and any supervisory actions.

4. Research press releases and published news stories about the institution and its private-banking activities.
5. Review internal and external audit reports and any internal risk assessments performed by the institution's internal or external auditors on its private-banking activities. Review information on any assessments of the internal controls and risk profile of the private-banking function.
6. Contact management at the institution to ascertain what changes in private-banking services have occurred since the last inspection or if there are any planned in the near future.
 - a. Determine if the previous inspection or examination report(s) mention private banking; if not, ask management if they have commenced or plan to commence any private-banking activities within any part of the bank holding company organization.
 - b. Determine if there have been any changes to the strategic plan; senior management; or the level and type of private-banking activities, products, and services offered.
 - c. During the entire inspection of private-banking activities, be alert to the totality of the client relationship, product by product, in light of increasing client awareness and use of derivatives, emerging-market products, foreign exchange, and margined accounts.

2010.11.5.2 Full-Inspection Phase

1. After reviewing the private-banking functional areas, draw sound conclusions about the quality and culture of management and stated private-banking policies.
2. Evaluate the adequacy of risk-management policies and practices governing private-banking activities.
3. Assess the organization of the private-banking function and evaluate the quality of management's supervision of private-banking activities. An appraisal of management covers the—
 - a. full range of functions (i.e., supervision and organization, risk management, fidu-

- ciary standards, operational controls, management information systems, audit, and compliance) and activities related to the operation of the private-banking activities; and
 - b. discharge of responsibilities by the institution's directors through a long-range organizational plan that accommodates the volume and business services handled, local business practices and the institution's competition, and the growth and development of the institution's private-banking business.
4. Determine if management has effective procedures for conducting ongoing reviews of client-account activity to detect, and protect the client from, any unauthorized activity and any account activity that is inconsistent with the client's profile (for example, frequent or sizeable unexplained transfers flowing through the account).
 5. Determine if the bank holding company has initiated and maintained controls and procedures that require each subsidiary private-banking institution to have account-opening procedures and documentation requirements that must be satisfied before an account can be opened.
 6. Determine if the bank holding company requires its subsidiary institutions to maintain and adhere to well-structured CCD procedures.
 7. Determine if the bank holding company has proper controls and procedures to ensure each institution's proper administration of trust and estates, including strict controls over assets, prudent investment and management of assets, and meticulous record-keeping. Review previous trust examination reports and consult with the designated Federal Reserve System trust examiners.
 8. Ascertain whether the bank holding company adequately supervises the custody services of its subsidiaries. The bank holding company should ensure that each institution has established and currently maintains procedures for the proper administration of custody services, including the regular review of the services on a preset schedule.
 9. Determine whether subsidiary institutions are required to and actually maintain strong controls and supervision over funds transfers.
 10. Ascertain if institution management and staff are required to perform due diligence, that is, to verify and document that the funds of its private-banking customers were derived through legitimate means, and when extending credit, to verify that the use of loan proceeds was legitimate.
 11. Review the institution's use of deposit accounts.
 - a. Assess the adequacy of the institution's controls and whether they are appropriately used.
 - b. Determine if client monies flow through client deposit accounts and whether the accounts function as the sole conduit and paper trail for client transactions.
 12. Determine and ensure that each institution's approach to Suspicious Activity Reports (SARs) is proactive and that the bank holding company and each institution have well-established procedures covering the SAR process. Establish whether there is accountability within the organization for the analysis and follow-up of internally identified suspicious activity (this analysis includes a sound decision on whether the bank holding company or an institution needs to file, or is required by regulation to file, a SAR).

Fees Involving Investments of Fiduciary Assets in Mutual Funds and Potential Conflicts of Interest

Section 2010.12

Banking organizations, including trust institutions, are increasingly encountering various direct or indirect financial incentives to place trust assets with particular mutual funds. Such incentives include the payment of fees to banking organizations for using nonaffiliated fund families as well as other incentives for using those mutual funds that are managed by the institution or an affiliate. The payment of such fees, referred to variously as shareholder, subaccounting, or administrative service fees, may be structured as payments to reimburse the institution for performing standard recordkeeping and accounting functions for the institution's fiduciary accounts. Those functions may consist of maintaining shareholder subaccounts and records, transmitting mutual fund communications as necessary, and arranging mutual fund transactions. These fees are typically based on a percentage or basis point amount of the dollar value of assets invested, or on transaction volume. Another form of compensation may consist of a lump-sum payment based on assets transferred into a mutual fund.

In all cases, decisions to place fiduciary assets in particular investments must be consistent with the underlying trust documents and must be undertaken in the best interests of the trust beneficiary. The primary supervisory concern is that an institution may fail to act in the best interest of beneficiaries if it stands to benefit independently from a particular investment. As a result, an institution may expose itself to an increased risk of legal action by account beneficiaries, as well as to potential violations of law or regulation.

In recent years, nearly every state legislature has modified its laws explicitly to allow fiduciaries to accept fees from mutual funds under certain conditions. As for the permissibility of other financial incentives, guidance under applicable law may be less clear. Conditions involving fee payments under state law often include compliance with standards of prudence, quality, and appropriateness for the account, and a determination of the "reasonableness" of the fees received by the institution. The Office of the Comptroller of the Currency (OCC) has also adopted these general standards for national banks.¹ The Employee Retirement Income Secu-

rity Act of 1974 (ERISA), however, generally prohibits fee arrangements between fiduciaries and third parties, such as mutual fund providers, with limited exceptions.² ERISA requirements supersede state laws and guidelines put forth by the bank regulatory agencies.

Similar conflict-of-interest concerns are raised by the investment of fiduciary-account assets in mutual funds for which the institution or an affiliate acts as investment adviser (referred to as "proprietary" funds). In this case, the institution receives a financial benefit from management fees generated by the mutual fund investments. This activity can be expected to become more prevalent as banking organizations more actively offer proprietary mutual funds.³ See SR-99-7.

2010.12.1 DUE-DILIGENCE REVIEW NEEDED BEFORE ENTERING INTO FEE ARRANGEMENTS

Although many state laws now explicitly authorize certain fee arrangements in conjunction with the investment of trust assets in mutual funds, institutions nonetheless face heightened legal and compliance risks from activities in which a conflict of interest exists, particularly if proper fiduciary standards are not observed and documented. Even when the institution does not exercise investment discretion, disclosure or other requirements may apply. Therefore, institutions should ensure that they perform and document an appropriate level of due diligence before entering into any fee arrangements similar to those described earlier or placing fiduciary assets in proprietary mutual funds. The following measures should be included in this process:

1. *Reasoned legal opinion.* The institution should obtain a reasoned opinion of counsel that addresses the conflict of interest inherent in the receipt of fees or other forms of com-

No. 704, February 1996.

2. ERISA section 406(b)(3). See Department of Labor, Pension Welfare and Benefits Administration Advisory Opinion 97-15A and Advisory Opinion 97-16A.

3. A Board interpretation of Regulation Y addresses investment of fiduciary-account assets in mutual funds for which the trustee bank's holding company acts as investment adviser. In general, such investments are prohibited unless specifically authorized by the trust instrument, court order, or state law. See 12 C.F.R. 225.125.

1. In general, national banks may make these investments and receive such fees if applicable law authorizes the practice and if the investment is prudent and appropriate for fiduciary accounts and consistent with established state law fiduciary requirements. This includes a "reasonableness" test for any fees received by the institution. See OCC Interpretive Letter

pensation from mutual fund providers in connection with the investment of fiduciary assets. The opinion should address the permissibility of the investment and compensation under applicable state or federal laws, the trust instrument, or a court order, as well as any applicable disclosure requirements or reasonableness standard for fees set forth in the law.

2. *Establishment of policies and procedures.* The institution should establish written policies and procedures governing the acceptance of fees or other compensation from mutual fund providers as well as the use of proprietary mutual funds. The policies must be reviewed and approved by the institution's board of directors or its designated committee. Policies and procedures should, at a minimum, address the following issues: (1) designation of decision-making authority; (2) analysis and documentation of investment decisions; (3) compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and sound fiduciary principles, including any disclosure requirements or "reasonableness" standards for fees; and (4) staff training and methods for monitoring compliance with policies and procedures by internal or external audit staff.
3. *Analysis and documentation of investment decisions.* When fees or other compensation are received in connection with fiduciary-account investments over which the institution has investment discretion or when such investments are made in the institution's proprietary mutual funds, the institution should fully document its analysis supporting the investment decision. This analysis should be performed on a regular, ongoing basis and would typically include factors such as historical performance comparisons with similar mutual funds, management fees and expense ratios, and ratings by recognized mutual fund rating services. The institution should also document its assessment that the investment is, and continues to be, (1) appropriate for the individual account, (2) in the best interest of account beneficiaries, and (3) in compliance with the provisions of the "prudent investor" or "prudent man rules," as appropriate.

formed ongoing due-diligence reviews when it is receiving fees or other compensation for investing fiduciary assets in mutual funds or investing such assets in proprietary mutual funds.

2. To determine that the institution maintains full ongoing documentation of investment decisions and performance, and obtains legal opinions regarding its compliance with applicable laws and fiduciary standards, as well as potential conflicts of interest that may arise from its receiving fees or other compensation for investing fiduciary assets in mutual funds, including proprietary funds.

2010.12.3 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

1. Determine if a written legal opinion is on file that focuses on conflicts of interest that may arise from the receipt of fees and other compensation from mutual fund providers for investing fiduciary assets, and from the investment of these assets in proprietary mutual funds. Ascertain whether the legal opinion addresses the investment's permissibility, including its resulting compensation and any disclosure requirements under applicable state or federal laws, the trust instrument, or a court order.
2. Verify that the institution's board of directors has approved written policies and procedures governing the acceptance of fees and other compensation from mutual fund providers for placing investments with their firms and for the use of proprietary funds. Ascertain that the policies and procedures, at a minimum—
- a. determine what group or individual has decision-making authority;
 - b. analyze and document supporting investment decisions;
 - c. require compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and sound fiduciary principles, including disclosure requirements or reasonableness standards for fees; and
 - d. address staff training and methods for monitoring compliance with policies and procedures by internal and external audit staff.
3. When fees and other compensation are being received in connection with fiduciary-account investments (those in which the institution has authorized discretionary investment authority) or when such assets are involved in proprietary mutual funds, ascertain whether there is full documentation of the institution's analysis supporting its

2010.12.2 INSPECTION OBJECTIVES

1. To determine that the institution has per-

investment decisions on a regular, ongoing basis. Ascertain that the documentation includes—

- a. historical performance comparisons with other mutual funds, engagement fees and expense ratios, and ratings by recognized mutual fund rating agencies;
- b. an assessment that the investments are, and continue to be, appropriate for the individual account and in the best interests of its account beneficiaries; and
- c. evidence of continued compliance with the provisions of the “prudent investor” or “prudent man rules.”

Supervision of Subsidiaries (Establishing Accounts for Foreign Governments, Embassies, and Political Figures) Section 2010.13

On June 15, 2004, an interagency advisory concerning the embassy banking business and related banking matters was issued by the federal banking and thrift agencies¹ in coordination with the U.S. Department of the Treasury's Financial Crimes Enforcement Network. The purpose of the advisory is to provide general guidance to banking organizations regarding the treatment of accounts for foreign governments, foreign embassies, and foreign political figures.

The joint interagency statement advises banking organizations² that the decision to accept or reject an embassy or foreign government account is theirs alone to make. Financial institutions should be aware, however, that there are varying degrees of risk associated with such accounts, depending on the customer and the nature of the services provided. Financial institutions should take appropriate steps to manage such risks, consistent with sound practices and applicable anti-money-laundering laws and regulations. The advisory also encourages banking organizations to direct questions about embassy banking to their primary federal bank regulators. See SR-04-10.

2010.13.1 INTERAGENCY ADVISORY ON ACCEPTING ACCOUNTS FOR FOREIGN GOVERNMENTS, EMBASSIES, AND POLITICAL FIGURES

The interagency advisory answers questions on whether financial institutions should do business with foreign embassies and whether institutions should establish account services for foreign governments, foreign embassies, and foreign political figures. As it would with any new account, an institution should evaluate whether or not to accept a new account for a foreign government, embassy, or political figure. That decision should be made by the institution's management, under standards and guidelines

established by the board of directors, and should be based on the institution's own business objectives, its assessment of the risks associated with particular accounts or lines of business, and its capacity to manage those risks. The agencies will not, in the absence of extraordinary circumstances, direct or encourage any institution to open, close, or refuse a particular account or relationship.

Providing financial services to foreign governments and embassies and to foreign political figures can, depending on the nature of the customer and the services provided, involve varying degrees of risk. Such services can range from account relationships that enable an embassy to handle the payment of operational expenses—for example, payroll, rent, and utilities—to ancillary services or accounts provided to embassy staff or foreign-government officials. Each of these relationships potentially poses different levels of risk. Institutions are expected to assess the risks involved in any such relationships and to take steps to ensure both that such risks are appropriately managed and that the institution can do so in full compliance with its obligations under the Bank Secrecy Act, as amended by the USA Patriot Act, and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

When an institution elects to establish financial relationships with foreign governments, embassies, or foreign political figures, the agencies, consistent with their usual practice of risk-based supervision, will make their own assessment of the risks involved in such business. As is the case with all accounts, the institution should expect appropriate scrutiny by examiners that is commensurate with the level of risk presented by the account relationship. As in any case where higher risks are presented, the institution should expect an increased level of review by examiners to ensure that the institution has in place controls and compliance oversight systems that are adequate to monitor and manage such risks, as well as personnel trained in the management of such risks and in the requirements of applicable laws and regulations.

Institutions that have or are considering taking on relationships with foreign governments, embassies, or political figures should ensure that such customers are aware of the requirements of U.S. laws and regulations to which the institution is subject. Institutions should, to the maximum extent feasible, seek to structure such

1. The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, the Office of Thrift Supervision, and the National Credit Union Administration (the agencies).

2. The advisory is primarily directed to financial institutions located in the United States. The boards of directors of bank holding companies, however, should consider whether the advisory should be applied to their other U.S. subsidiaries' financial and other services.

relationships in order to conform them to conventional U.S. domestic banking relationships so as to reduce the risks that might be presented by such relationships.